JAPANESE From Zero! 1

Extensive Grammar!

Learn Hiragana!

Workbook Included!



George Trombley Jr.

Yukari Takenaka

Learn to Speak, Read and Write Japanese!

George Trombley has worked as a professional Japanese interpreter for over 20 years specializing in business, technical, medical, and entertainment simultaneous interpreting. In 1998, George and Yukari Takenaka created Japanese From Zero's live Japanese language classes in Las Vegas, NV, and developed their classes into the *Japanese From Zero!* book series and the YesJapan.com interactive Japanese language education website.

Distributed worldwide by:
From Zero, LLC
10624 S. Eastern Ave. #A769,
Henderson, NV 89052.

Printed in USA & England.
ISBN-10: 0976998122
ISBN-13: 978-097699812

1st edition, 2006
2nd edition, 2008
3rd edition, (major update) 2011
3rd edition (minor update), November, 2011
3rd edition (minor update), August, 2012
3rd edition (minor update), September, 2012
4th edition (skipped due to bad luck)
5th edition (minor update), September, 2014

JapaneseFromZero.com

Japanese From Zero! Book 1
– CONTENTS –

Japanese From Zero!

Welcome!

How this book works

Introduction

Welcome to JAPANESE FROM ZERO!

LEARNING JAPANESE can be intimidating at first, but don't worry! Our method is designed to lead you step-by-step through the basics of Japanese grammar.

Whether you're learning Japanese for business, travel, or to make new friends, we've created these lessons to make sure you feel confident in your ability to SPEAK, READ, and WRITE what you've learned.

❑ Japanese characters

WHAT ARE THESE STRANGE LETTERS? The Japanese language uses a set of symbols called *hiragana* (to spell Japanese words), *katakana* (to spell foreign words), and *kanji* (to represent entire words or names). Over the course of BOOK 1, we will teach you groups of hiragana piece-by-piece to gradually build up your understanding and familiarity.

Our lessons begin with *ro–maji* (Japanese words spelled with Roman letters), but as each lesson progresses, we will continually substitute the hiragana you've learned. By the end of this book, you'll not only be able to speak Japanese, but read and write it too!

❑ Japanese punctuation facts

HERE ARE SOME QUICK FACTS about Japanese writing to help you get started.

UPPERCASE/LOWERCASE

In English, we learn to write both *A* and *a*, but in Japanese, あ is always あ no matter where you find it in a sentence. There are no upper and lower cases in Japanese.

QUESTION MARKS

Written Japanese doesn't (normally) use the question mark punctuation (?). Instead the hiragana か (ka) is placed at the end of a sentence to indicate a question.

Example

Nan desu ka. = What is it?

Both are questions, but in Japanese, using *ka* does the trick. (More on this in Lesson 1.)

PERIODS (or "What's that funny-looking circle?")

Example

Kore wa hon desu. → converted to hiragana becomes → これは ほんです。

This punctuation mark 。does exactly the same job as the period you normally use to end a sentence in English.

❑ About the pre-lessons

Before this book introduces grammar concepts in lesson 1, there will be 4 pre-lessons. The pre-lessons are designed to give you some of the tools needed to begin to interact with native Japanese speakers. You will learn pronunciation, basic counting, initial conversation phrases, and other basic concepts.

Once you complete the pre-lessons, you will learn many key Japanese grammar concepts and how to read and write hiragana.

❑ About the authors

Author George Trombley is a professional Japanese interpreter who over the past 16 years has interpreted at corporations such as Microsoft, IBM, NTT DoCoMo, Lucent Technologies, and in countries throughout North America, Europe, Asia and the Middle East.

George Trombley and his wife Yukari Takenaka formed the YesJapan Language School in 1998 in Las Vegas, NV. Since then, the live classroom courses have formed the basis for the *Japanese From Zero!* textbook series and the YesJapan.com interactive language learning website.

❑ WRITE IN THIS BOOK!

This book is your tool to learning in a way that will stick! Learning Japanese is hard work so we want your knowledge to last forever. *Japanese From Zero!* is designed to be an interactive workbook where you can take personal notes, add new words or phrases of your own, and develop your writing skills from hopeless/crazy/illegible (we all start that way!) to expert-level.

Every time you write in this book, you're making your connection to Japanese a little bit stronger - we guarantee it!

Ganbatte kudasai!
George Trombley
Yukari Takenaka

Pre-Lesson
A
Level ①

Pronunciation Guide & The Basics

Understanding Japanese phonetics

A Why Learn Hiragana?

It's important to know how powerful your Japanese will be if you can read and write it. Learning to read and write Japanese gives your brain a turbo boost in comprehension. You will immediately see how knowing the hiragana benefits your Japanese pronunciation.

All of your life you have been reading the alphabet a certain way. You have learned that the letter combination "TO" sounds like the number 2. This instinct will be hard to overcome at first. In Japanese, "TO" is read as "TOW". If you read this like you were taught in grade school your Japanese accent would be pretty bad! But don't worry - this book will teach you the correct way to read the Japanese hiragana writing system.

Before you can learn hiragana and katakana, you will need to know how Japanese is represented in the Roman alphabet. This lesson will teach you how Japanese is pronounced. Let's get started!

A The Japanese Writing Systems

There are three Japanese writing systems:

- hiragana (pronounced "hear-uh-gah-nah")
- katakana (pronounced "kah-tah-kah-nah")
- kanji (pronounced "kahn-jee")

Kanji are Chinese characters, and each one has a specific meaning. Many kanji have multiple meanings and can be read different ways. Hiragana and katakana are phonetic characters derived from the more complicated kanji. They each represent a sound and do not have meaning by themselves.

The three writing systems are used together to write Japanese. Hiragana and kanji are used together to form all Japanese words. Katakana is mostly used to represent words of foreign origin or any word that was not originally Japanese. In daily life the combination of these three systems, plus roman letters called "ro–maji", are used in all types of media.

A Japanese Pronunciation

Anyone can sound great in Japanese. Although English is made up of over a thousand possible sounds, Japanese has many less. A little over a hundred sounds are all you need to speak Japanese.

For this reason, it is much easier for English-speaking people to learn natural Japanese pronunciation than it is for Japanese speakers to learn natural English pronunciation. With just a few exceptions, Japanese sounds are based on the following five vowel sounds:

❑ Normal vowels

These sounds are short and simple, with no glide or lengthening.

Roman Letter	Sounds Like	Example
a	**ah** as in f**a**ther	**a**kai (red)
i	**ee** as in s**ee**	**i**nochi (life)
u	**oo** as in z**oo**	**u**ma (horse)
e	**eh** as in m**e**n	**e**bi (shrimp)
o	**oh** as in b**oa**t	**o**toko (man)

Now let's look at some of the sounds that make up the Japanese language. Use the same pronunciation as above for the sound sets listed below.

ka, ki, ku, ke, ko	sa, shi, su, se, so	pa, pi, pu, pe, po
ga, gi, gu, ge, go	na, ni, nu, ne, no	ba, bi, bu, be, bo

The following phonetic sounds are based on the "normal vowel" sounds listed above. The only difference is how the sound starts.

Roman Letter	Sounds Like	Example
ka	kah	**ka** (mosquito)
shi	shee	**shi**ru (to know)
tsu	tsoo	**tsu**ru (crane bird)
ne	neh	**ne**ko (cat)
po	poh	tan**popo** (dandelion)

❑ Double vowels

In Japanese it is common that sounds will be lengthened. For example, in some words you will see a sound such as KA followed by an A, or NE followed by E, etc., to lengthen the sound.

Some books will represent the lengthened sound with a straight line over the lengthened vowel. This method may help you verbally, but doesn't help you when learning how to read and write Japanese. In *Japanese from Zero!*, A, I, U, E, or O is added to the sound that is to be lengthened just as the actual hiragana symbols are added to the word when written in Japanese. Look at the possible long vowel sound combinations.

Roman Letters	Sound	Example
aa, a–	**ah** as in f**a**ther	o**kaa**san (mother)
ii, i–	**ee** as in s**ee**	o**jii**san (grandfather)
uu, u–	**oo** as in z**oo**	zu**tsuu** (headache)
ei, ee, e–	**eh** as in m**e**n	o**nee**san (older sister)
ou, oo, o–	**oh** as in b**oa**t	**mou**fu (blanket)

Words that are written in katakana use a "–" as the "lengthener" instead of a repeating vowel. You'll learn more about katakana in *Japanese From Zero!* book 2.

Example Words

kyoutsuu	common	otousan	father
satou	sugar	obaasan	grandmother
heiwa	peace	sensou	war
yasashii	kind	isogashii	busy

❑ Long versus short sounds

The meaning of a Japanese word can be changed by lengthening just one syllable.

Examples

ie	house
iie	no
obasan	aunt
obaasan	grandmother
ojisan	uncle
ojiisan	grandfather

❑ Double consonants

Some Japanese words use double consonant sounds. Double consonants such as 'kk', 'pp', 'tt', and 'cch' must be stressed more than a single consonant to show the correct meaning of a word.

Examples

roku	number six
rokku	rock (music)
uta	a song
utta	sold (past tense verb)
mata	again
matta	waited (past tense verb)

Pre-Lesson
B
Level ①

Basic Counting

0 to 9999

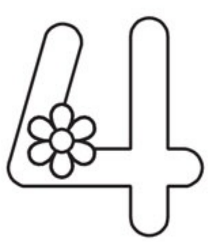
B The Basic Numbers

❑ Single Numbers

Basic counting in Japanese is easy! All you have to do is remember the following list of numbers, a few rules, and you're on the way.

the single numbers – 0-10		
rei, maru, zero ☆	れい、まる、ゼロ	0
ichi	いち	1
ni	に	2
san	さん	3
shi, yon ☆	し、よん	4
go	ご	5
roku	ろく	6
shichi, nana ☆	しち、なな	7
hachi	はち	8
ku, kyuu ☆	く、きゅう	9
juu	じゅう	10

B Culture Clip: Why Two Versions?



The numbers with a ☆ have more than one version. Sometimes one version must be used instead of the other, but many times the version used is a personal preference.



There are also some cultural reasons for the different versions. The number four in Japanese is *yon*, or *shi*. *Shi* also means death. The number nine in Japanese is *kyuu* or *ku*. *Ku* also means suffering.

For these reasons, four and nine are considered to be unlucky in Japan. Many apartment buildings in Japan do not have apartments numbered four or nine. The different versions are used extensively in Japanese, so make sure to remember them.

B The Counting Units

❑ The teens
To form numbers from 11 to 19, start with juu (10) and place the additional number you need directly after it. It is much like counting with roman numerals.

the teens – 11-19		
juu ichi	じゅういち	11
juu ni	じゅうに	12
juu san	じゅうさん	13
juu yon, juu shi ☆	じゅうよん、じゅうし	14
juu go	じゅうご	15
juu roku	じゅうろく	16
juu nana, juu shichi ☆	じゅうなな、じゅうしち	17
juu hachi	じゅうはち	18
juu kyuu, juu ku ☆	じゅうきゅう、じゅうく	19

❑ The tens
The tens are formed by combining the single numbers with juu. For example, 20 is two tens (*ni juu*), and 50 is five tens (*go juu*). The concept is simple. Look at this chart:

the tens – 10-90			
juu		じゅう	10
ni juu		にじゅう	20
san juu		さんじゅう	30
yon juu	never “shi juu”	よんじゅう	40
go juu		ごじゅう	50
roku juu		ろくじゅう	60
nana juu	never “shichi juu”	ななじゅう	70
hachi juu		はちじゅう	80
kyuu juu	never “ku juu”	きゅうじゅう	90

❑ Combining tens and singles
To make a number like 31, just string the numbers 30 and 1 together.

Examples

31 is san *juu* (three tens) + ichi (one) = *san juu ichi*
52 is *go juu* (five tens) + *ni* (two) = *go juu ni*
87 is *hachi juu* (eight tens) + *nana* (seven) = *hachi juu nana*

ni juu ichi	にじゅういち	21
ni juu ni	にじゅうに	22
ni juu san	にじゅうさん	23
ni juu yon / shi	にじゅうよん / し	24
ni juu go	にじゅうご	25
ni juu roku	にじゅうろく	26
ni juu nana / shichi	にじゅうなな / しち	27
ni juu hachi	にじゅうはち	28
ni juu ku / kyuu	にじゅうく / きゅう	29

❑ The hundreds and thousands

With *hyaku* (hundreds) and *sen* (thousands), the pattern is basically the same, but there are some variations. The variations are marked with ☆.

the hundreds – 100-900			
hyaku		ひゃく	100
ni hyaku		にひゃく	200
san byaku ☆	never "san hyaku"	さんびゃく	300
yon hyaku	never "shi hyaku"	よんひゃく	400
go hyaku		ごひゃく	500
roppyaku ☆	never "roku hyaku"	ろっぴゃく	600
nana hyaku	never "shichi hyaku"	ななひゃく	700
happyaku ☆	never "hachi hyaku"	はっぴゃく	800
kyuu hyaku	never "ku hyaku"	きゅうひゃく	900

the thousands – 1000-9000			
sen, issen		せん、いっせん	1,000
ni sen		にせん	2,000
san zen ☆	never "san sen"	さんぜん	3,000
yon sen	never "shi sen"	よんせん	4,000
go sen		ごせん	5,000
roku sen		ろくせん	6,000
nana sen	never "shichi sen"	ななせん	7,000
hassen ☆	never "hachi sen"	はっせん	8,000
kyuu sen	never "ku sen"	きゅうせん	9,000

❑ Putting all the numbers together

Now that you know the hundreds and thousands you can simply string the numbers together to say numbers up to 9,999. The first few examples below will use repeating numbers to help you get used to putting the numbers together.

Examples

1. 222	ni hyaku ni juu ni
2. 555	go hyaku go juu go
3. 888	happyaku hachi juu hachi
4. 4,444	yon sen yon hyaku yon juu yon
5. 7,777	nana sen nana hyaku nana juu nana

Now let's mix up the numbers. Make sure you understand the numbers with exceptions to the patterns.

Examples

1. 639	roppyaku san juu kyuu
2. 360	sanbyaku roku juu
3. 2,512	ni sen go hyaku juu ni
4. 8,096	hassen kyuu juu roku
5. 9,853	kyuu sen happyaku go juu san

B For practice れんしゅうのため

Practice saying your phone, cell phone, fax numbers, etc., in Japanese. Learn them forwards and backwards.

When you are riding in your car, practice reading the numbers on other cars' license plates.



B Lesson Activities

❑ Number conversion

Write out the following numbers in Japanese.

1) 34	____________	2) 59	____________
3) 29	____________	4) 78	____________
5) 120	____________	6) 392	____________
7) 57	____________	8) 3,004	____________
9) 1,203	____________	10) 789	____________
11) 99	____________	12) 4,675	____________
13) 932	____________	14) 8,773	____________

❑ Everyday Numbers

Follow the instructions for each task.

1. Write your home phone number in Japanese.

   ____

2. Write your cellular number, or work phone number in Japanese.

   ____

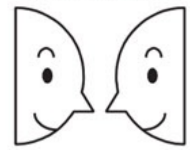
3. Write your license plate number in Japanese. (Write any letters in ro–maji)

   ____

Pre-Lesson
C
Level ①

First Meeting

Self introduction and basic greetings



C About This Lesson このレッスンについて

If there is one thing you need to be good at, it is introducing yourself. You should practice this as often as you can. You only get one first impression.

The good news is that not being a Japanese speaker gives you an advantage. If you mess up your initial introduction, you will most likely be forgiven. You are not Japanese, and everyone will understand that you are still learning.

C Culture clip: Bowing



In the next conversation you will be able to practice a first-meeting conversation, but what you cannot see in the text is the bow that each person does when they say, "*Hajimemashite.*" Bowing is as important to the Japanese as shaking hands is to others.

Many of us have always heard that the deeper you bow, the more respect you bestow upon the person to whom you are bowing. This is true, though the majority of students learning Japanese will not find themselves in a situation that warrants a deep bow. When first meeting someone, a 30-degree bow held for about two seconds is standard. But keep in mind that, as a foreigner to Japan, the Japanese do not expect you to know Japanese customs, and if you bow incorrectly it will not be considered rude.



The most common everyday bow is an informal 15-degree bow held for one or two seconds. You will be bowed to no matter where you go. The next time you see a Japanese person talking on the phone, you might even see them bowing to the person on the other end of the conversation! It is not necessary to return bows to waiters or staff in department stores. A nod of the head will suffice.

Hands are normally kept near the body when bowing. Men tend to have their hands at their sides while, women will usually place them together on their thighs with the fingertips overlapping or touching.

C Conversation かいわ

❑ Meeting someone for the first time

Let's look at the phrases that will come up when you first meet someone.

1. **Hajimemashite**
   Nice to meet you. / How do you do?
   This phrase is only used when first meeting someone. When pronouncing "Hajimemashite" make sure that the "i" in "mashite" is silent to sound similar to "mashte".

2. **___(name)___ to moushimasu.**
   I am ___(name)___.
   Although there are other ways to say your name, this is an excellent way to introduce yourself. It is very polite and humble at the same time. It is the equivalent to saying "I am called __________".

3. **Yoroshiku onegai shimasu.**
   Best regards. / I look forward to working with you.
   It's amazing how many different meanings there are for this phrase. This phrase is multi-purpose and its meaning varies depending on the situation. When used as it is in Conversation 1, it means something to the effect of, "Let's be nice to each other."

   Although this phrase is very common when speaking Japanese, there is not an English equivalent that properly sums up its many meanings. Now let's see the phrases we have learned in action.

Conversation 1: First meeting	
This conversation is between people meeting for the first time. Mr. Smith (Sumisu) is American and Mr. Mori is Japanese.	
Mr. Smith:	Hajimemashite. Sumisu to moushimasu.
Mr. Mori:	Hajimemashite. Mori to moushimasu. Yoroshiku onegai shimasu.
Mr. Smith:	Yoroshiku onegai shimasu.
Mr. Smith:	Nice to meet you. I am Smith (My name is Smith).
Mr. Mori:	Nice to meet you. I am Mori (My name is Mori). Best regards.
Mr. Smith:	Best regards.

❑ Asking someone their age

Early on in your quest to learn Japanese, your conversations will be limited to what you can reliably understand and say in Japanese. Although the topic of "age" is not normally discussed in first time situations (and might be especially awkward in a business meeting!), it isn't a strange topic to discuss when meeting new people outside of business.

1. **Nansai desu ka.**
   How old are you?

2. **(years) sai desu.**
   I am (years) years old.
   If needed, please review the numbers you learned in the prior lesson. The word *"sai"* literally means "years old." It must always come after the number representing your age.

Examples		
	3 years old	san sai
	15 years old	juu go sai
	100 years old	hyaku sai

Conversation 2: How old are you?	
Mr. Smith:	Nansai desu ka.
Ms. Hayashi:	Ni juu go sai desu.
Mr. Smith:	How old are you?
Ms. Hayashi:	I am 25 years old.

❑ Learning to say your age

As previously stated, to say your age, just add *sai* after the number of years. Some ages are said differently than you might think. Use the chart below to learn the correct way.

years old - とし		
1 year old	issai	never "ichi sai"
2 years old	ni sai	
3 years old	san sai	
4 years old	yon sai	never "shi sai"
5 years old	go sai	
6 years old	roku sai	
7 years old	nana sai	never "shichi sai"
8 years old	hassai	never "hachi sai"

9 years old	kyuu sai	never “kusai” (*kusai* means smelly!)
10 years old	jussai	never “juu sai“
11 years old	juu issai	never “juu ichi sai“
12 years old	juu ni sai	
13 years old	juu san sai	
14 years old	juu yon sai	never “juu shi sai“
15 years old	juu go sai	
16 years old	juu roku sai	
17 years old	juu nana sai	never “juu shichi sai”
18 years old	juu hassai	never “juu hachi sai”
19 years old	juu kyuu sai	
20 years old	hatachi	never “ni juu sai“
21 years old	ni juu issai	never “ni juu ichi sai“
22 years old	ni juu ni sai	
23 years old	ni juu san sai	
24 years old	ni juu yon sai	never “ni juu shi sai“
25 years old	ni juu go sai	
26 years old	ni juu roku sai	
27 years old	ni juu nana sai	never “ni juu shichi sai“
28 years old	ni juu hassai	never “ni juu hachi sai“
29 years old	ni juu kyuu sai	never “ni juu ku sai“
30 years old	san jussai	never “san juu sai“
40 years old	yon jussai	never “shi juu sai“ or “yon juu sai”
50 years old	go jussai	never “go juu sai”
100 years old	hyaku sai	sometimes said as “hyakkusai“
Note: The first ten numbers set the pattern for all the numbers that follow.		

❑ How old do I look?

In your beginning stages of learning Japanese, the following conversation will be a really fun way to break the ice with your new Japanese friends. It is especially fun since Westerners and Japanese have different perceptions about how old someone looks.

1. **Nansai ni miemasu ka.**
   How old do I look?
   This is probably the most common response to “Nansai desu ka.” Keep in mind that honesty can be brutal in any language, so be kind with your answer! This phrase is great because it gives you and your new friend an opportunity for fun.

2. **__(years)___ sai ni miemasu.**
   You look ___(years)___ years old.

Conversation 3 How old do I look?	
Mr. Smith:	Nansai desu ka.
Ms. Hayashi:	Nansai ni miemasu ka.
Mr. Smith:	Hatachi ni miemasu.
Mr. Smith:	How old are you?
Ms. Hayashi:	How old do I look?
Mr. Smith:	You look 20 years old.

C Speaking Naturally しぜんに はなすこと

As with any language, there is "grammatically correct" and "culturally correct". In this section you will learn how to sound more natural when speaking Japanese. In some cases you might even learn how to break a rule you just learned, and in some cases you might learn what is more commonly used.

❑ My name is…

Many new students of Japanese learn to say "Watashi no namae wa __________ desu", which means, "My name is ________." However, although grammatically correct, this way of introducing yourself is not common between Japanese people.

Conversation 4: My name is… (grammatically correct)	
Ms. Hayashi:	(O)namae wa nan desu ka.
Mr. Smith:	Watashi no namae wa Sumisu desu.
Ms. Hayashi:	What is your name?
Mr. Smith:	My name is Smith.

Conversation 5: My name is… (the natural way)	
Ms. Hayashi:	(O)namae wa nan desu ka.
Mr. Smith:	Sumisu to moushimasu.
Ms. Hayashi:	What is your name?
Mr. Smith:	I am Smith (My name is Smith).

C Lesson Activities

❑ Japanese numbers

Translate the following Japanese into English.

1. nana juu go sai ________________
2. yon juu hassai ________________
3. hachi juu ni sai ________________
4. hyaku nana sai ________________
5. san juu yon sai ________________
6. juu roku sai ________________
7. go juu issai ________________
8. hatachi ________________
9. happyaku sai ________________
10. issai ________________

❑ Question and answer 1

Answer the following question in Japanese.

1. Nansai desu ka.

____

2. (O)namae wa nan desu ka.

____

❑ Question and answer 2

For each of the pictures below answer the question:

Nansai ni miemasu ka.

1.



Answer: ______________________________

____

2.



Answer: ______________________________

____

3.



Answer: ______________________________

____

4.

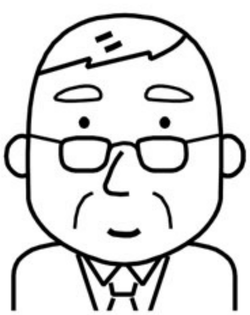
4.



Answer: ______________________________

____

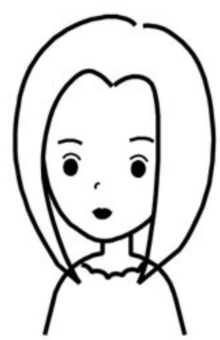
5.



Answer: ______________________________

____

6.



Answer: ______________________________

____

Pre-Lesson
D
Level ①

Coming and Going

Basic greetings and farewells



D About This Lesson このレッスンについて

In Japan, there are certain phrases used for coming and going. These phrases change depending on whether the location is your own home, someone else's home, or a place of business.

D New Phrases あたらしい ことば

❑ Daily Greetings

Try to use the new phrases below every day with your friends and family.

1. **Ohayou gozaimasu. / Ohayou.**
   Good morning.
   The short version of *ohayou gozaimasu* is *ohayou* and is normally only used with friends, family and people you have a casual relationship with.

2. **Konnichiwa.**
   Good afternoon.
   The sound of the double consonant ‘nn’ in *konnichiwa* is held longer than just one “n”.

3. **Konbanwa.**
   Good evening.
   This is only used when you first meet with someone in the evening. It cannot be used at the end of an evening.

4. **Oyasuminasai. / Oyasumi.**
   Good night.
   The short version, *oyasumi*, should only be used with friends, family and people you have a casual relationship with.

5. **Arigatou gozaimasu. / Arigatou.**
   Thank you.
   Arigatou is very common as a short way to say “Thank you”. In real life, you will rarely hear the often-taught version *Doumo arigatou gozaimasu*.

❑ Leaving and returning home

The following phrases are said everyday by millions of Japanese people as they leave and arrive home:

1. **itte kimasu.**
   I will go and come back. / I'll be back.
   This phrase is said when you leave your home. It can also be said when you are leaving any place to which you plan to return.

2. **itterasshai.**
   Have a good day. / Take care. / See you.
   This is the response to *itte kimasu*. This phrase is said to someone who is leaving and will be back. *itterasshai* is normally only used in situations when the person leaving will return in a relatively short time.

3. **Tadaima.**
   I'm home. / I'm back.
   This phrase is commonly used when arriving home. It can also be used when returning to a place you recently left.

4. **Okaerinasai.**
   Welcome back home.
   This is the response to *tadaima*. It can also be said to someone who has just returned to a place they have been before.

Conversation 1: Leaving home
The following conversation is between Jiro and his mother as Jiro leaves to go to school.
Jiro: itte kimasu!
Jiro's mother: itterasshai!

Conversation 2: Returning home
The following conversation is between Jiro and his mother as Jiro arrives back home from school.
Jiro: Tadaima!
Jiro's mother: Okaerinasai!

D Speaking Naturally しぜんに はなすこと

❑ The silent "U" sound

Many phrases taught in this lesson end with "masu".

Examples

1. Ohayou gozaimasu.
2. itte kimasu.
3. Arigatou gozaimasu.

In everyday spoken Japanese, the final "u" in words containing "masu" is silent and the word is pronounced as "mas". Practice your words and phrases with this pronunciation and you will sound more natural.

D Lesson Activities

❑ Japanese translation

Translate the following conversation into English.

1.	
Mari:	itte kimasu.
Mari's mother:	itterashai.
Mari:	
Mari's mother:	

2.	
Kenji:	Tadaima.
Kenji's father:	Okaerinasai.
Kenji:	
Kenji's father:	

Vocabulary Groups

During your studies you will soon realize that grammar points aren't so easily forgotten. But you need more than grammar to speak effectively – you need vocabulary too!

Throughout this book we will introduce groups of words that are important to everyday Japanese speaking. You don't have to try to memorize them all at once. Just familiarize yourself with each group since they will be showing up in subsequent lessons.

❑ Explanation of Progressive, Kana and Kanji

When new words are introduced, multiple Japanese versions of each word will be introduced. This will make it easier to review once you know how to read more Japanese.

Progressive – As you learn hiragana throughout each lesson, the progressive version will slowly replace the English alphabet with hiragana that you have learned.

Kana – This version will be either Hiragana or Katakana characters depending on how the word is normally written in Japanese. Hiragana and Katakana are collectively referred to as Kana.

Kanji – When a word is normally written in Kanji, it will be displayed here. If there is no Kanji for that word, then the Kana version will be repeated.

A the body

Progressive	Kana	Kanji	English
kuchi	くち	口	mouth
me	め	目	eye
mimi	みみ	耳	ear
hana	はな	鼻	nose
kao	かお	顔	face
te	て	手	hand
ashi	あし	足	foot; leg
yubi	ゆび	指	finger
atama	あたま	頭	head
ha	は	歯	tooth, teeth

B bed and bath

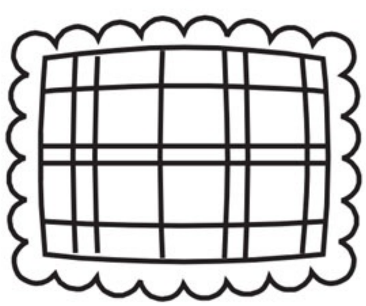
Progressive	Kana	Kanji	English
makura	まくら	枕	pillow
beddo	ベッド	ベッド	bed
futon	ふとん	布団	futon
moufu	もうふ	毛布	blanket
taoru	タオル	タオル	towel
ofuro	おふろ	お風呂	bath
sekken	せっけん	石けん	soap
haburashi	ハブラシ	歯ブラシ	toothbrush
kagami	かがみ	鏡	mirror
mado	まど	窓	window



ゆび



せっけん



まくら



タオル

Lesson 1 Level ①

Creating Simple Sentences

What is it?



1 About This Lesson このレッスンについて

Before The Lesson

1. Review vocabulary groups A and B.
2. Make sure you understand the basics of Japanese pronunciation from Pre-Lesson A.

Lesson Goals

1. Learn how to ask and answer simple questions
2. Learn the question particle *ka*

From The Teachers

1. Remember the phrase *nan desu ka* (What is it?) and understand how *desu* is used.

1 New Words あたらしい ことば

Progressive	Kana	Kanji	English
nani	なに	何	What?
hai	はい	はい	yes
iie *	いいえ	いいえ	no
inu	いぬ	犬	dog
neko	ねこ	猫	cat
~san (after name)	さん	さん	Mr., Ms., Mrs., Miss
Tanaka	たなか	田中	(a common last name)
Kobayashi	こばやし	小林	(a common last name)

* **NOTE:** In this book, *iie* and other Japanese words that start with "i" will be typed in lowercase to avoid confusion with lowercase "L".

1 New Phrases あたらしい かいわ

Each lesson will have several new phrases. At this point, don't worry about the grammar; simply memorizing the phrases will be more beneficial at this point.

1.	Do you understand?	Wakarimasu ka.
2.	Yes, I understand.	Hai, wakarimasu.
3.	No, I don't understand.	iie, wakarimasen.
4.	I don't understand. / I don't know. *	Wakarimasen.
5.	Please say it once again.	Mou ichido itte kudasai.
6.	Please speak more slowly.	Motto yukkuri itte kudasai.

* **NOTE:** Although *wakarimasen* means "I don't understand," it is frequently used to mean "I don't know."

1 Grammar ぶんぽう

❑ Plurals

The Japanese language does not have plurals like English does. For example, *mimi* means "ear" or "ears," depending on the context of the sentence. Later you will learn that some words have plural forms, but for now remember that most words can be either plural or singular without any modification.

❑ Using *desu* to make a simple statement

Desu (usually pronounced "des"), depending on the context, can mean: "it is," "this is," "they are," "these are," "I am," "you are," "he is," "she is" and "we are." It is always placed at the end of a sentence. Look at these examples to see how *desu* is used:

[word] + desu

Example Sentences

1. <u>It is</u> a pillow. — Makura <u>desu</u>.
2. <u>I am</u> Tanaka. — Tanaka <u>desu</u>.
3. <u>She is</u> Ms. Kobayashi. — Kobayashi san <u>desu</u>.
4. <u>It is</u> soap. — Sekken <u>desu</u>.

❑ Making a question using *ka*

Ka is like the English question mark. To change a statement in Japanese to a question, you just add *ka* at the end.

[word] + desu ka

Example Sentences

1. Is it a pillow?	Makura desu ka.
2. Are you Tanaka?	Tanaka san desu ka.
3. Is she Ms. Kobayashi?	Kobayashi san desu ka.
4. Is it soap?	Sekken desu ka.

❑ The question word *nani*

The question word *nani* or *nan* means "what." The two versions are used differently. *Nani* can stand alone to simply mean "What?" *Nan* cannot be used alone. It is always used with other words such as *desu*, as in the sentence "Nan desu ka" ("What is it?").

Example Sentences

1. <u>Nan</u> desu ka.	What is it?
2. <u>Nan</u>sai desu ka.	How old are you?
3. <u>Nani</u> iro desu ka. *	What color is it?
4. <u>Nani</u> ga suki desu ka. *	What do you like?

*** NOTE:** The grammar used in the example sentences 3 and 4 above using nani will be taught in later lessons. In the mean time, simply remember that you will see both NAN and NANI to mean "what".

1 Culture Clip: Using *san* for Mr., Mrs., etc.

It is a custom in Japan to add *san* to the end of someone's name. *San* means "Mr.," "Ms.," "Mrs.," and "Miss," and can be used on first or last names. It is considered rude not to use *san*, especially when talking to or about someone you are not close to, or to someone who is older or above you in status. You should <u>never</u> use *san* when referring to yourself or someone in your own family.

1 Q&A しつもんと こたえ

1. **What is it?**	**Nan desu ka.**
It is a pillow.	Makura desu.
It is soap.	Sekken desu.
I don't know.	Wakarimasen.
2. **Is it (this) a mirror?**	**Kagami desu ka.**
Yes, it is a mirror.	Hai, kagami desu.
No, it is a window.	iie, mado desu.
3. **Is (this) a bed?**	**Beddo desu ka.**
No, it is a futon.	iie, futon desu.
Yes, it is a bed.	Hai, beddo desu.
4. **Is he Mr. Tanaka?**	**Tanaka san desu ka.**
Yes, he is Mr. Tanaka.	Hai, Tanaka san desu.
No, he is Mr. Kobayashi.	iie, Kobayashi san desu.
5. **Is it a head?**	**Atama desu ka.**
No, it is a face.	iie, kao desu.
Yes, it is a head.	Hai, atama desu.
I don't know.	Wakarimasen.
6. **Do you understand?**	**Wakarimasu ka.**
No, I don't understand.	iie, wakarimasen.
Yes, I understand.	Hai, wakarimasu.
No.	iie.
7. **What is it?**	**Nan desu ka.**
It is a hand.	Te desu.
It is a foot.	Ashi desu.
It is a finger.	Yubi desu.
It is a toothbrush.	Haburashi desu.
8. **Is she Ms. Kobayashi?**	**Kobayashi san desu ka.**
I don't know.	Wakarimasen.
No, she is Ms. Tanaka.	iie, Tanaka san desu.
Yes, she is Ms. Kobayashi.	Hai, Kobayashi san desu.

Hiragana あいうえお

あ The goal ゴール

When you complete *Japanese From Zero!* you will be able to read and write all of the symbols shown below. This chart is read in traditional Japanese-style, from right-to-left and top-to-bottom.

Read right-to-left and top-to-bottom

わ wa	ら ra	や ya	ま ma	ぱ pa	ば ba	は ha	な na	だ da	た ta	ざ za	さ sa	が ga	か ka	あ a
	り ri		み mi	ぴ pi	び bi	ひ hi	に ni	ぢ ji	ち chi	じ ji	し shi	ぎ gi	き ki	い i
を wo	る ru	ゆ yu	む mu	ぷ pu	ぶ bu	ふ fu	ぬ nu	づ zu	つ tsu	ず zu	す su	ぐ gu	く ku	う u
	れ re		め me	ぺ pe	べ be	へ he	ね ne	で de	て te	ぜ ze	せ se	げ ge	け ke	え e
ん n	ろ ro	よ yo	も mo	ぽ po	ぼ bo	ほ ho	の no	ど do	と to	ぞ zo	そ so	ご go	こ ko	お o

あ How this book works

Japanese From Zero! uses *Japanese From Zero's* PROGRESSIVE SYSTEM of teaching hiragana. As you learn new hiragana, we will immediately replace the roman letters (ro–maji) with the hiragana you have just learned. For example, after you learn あ (which sounds like "ah") we will mix it into the example words.

English	Before this lesson	After this lesson	Complete hiragana
you	anata	あ nata	あなた
dog	inu	い nu	いぬ
house	ie	いえ	いえ
mother	okaasan	お ka あ san	おかあさん

あ Some History れきし

Hiragana was created by a Buddhist monk over 1200 years ago (AD 774-835). At that time it was believed that women were not allowed to learn the very intricate kanji. After hiragana was introduced to women, they were able to express themselves in the written form. It is due to hiragana that women authored many of the first published works in Japan.

Hiragana character samples

あかさたなはまやらわん

Katakana was created by using portions of kanji, while the more rounded hiragana was created by simplifying kanji. Children in Japan learn hiragana first, then katakana, and finally kanji. Hiragana, with only 47 unique characters, can represent the entire Japanese language.

Katakana character samples

アカサタナハマヤラワン

Kanji, on the other hand, consists of over 10,000 characters. In 1981 the Japanese Ministry of Education announced 1,945 commonly used kanji called the *Joyou Kanji*. By the 6th grade, the average Japanese student knows half of the *Joyou Kanji*. Since this time more Kanji have been deemed necessary to learn and have been added to the *Joyou Kanji* list.

Kanji character samples

安加左太奈波末也良和毛

あ Writing Basics かくときの きほん

❑ What is a stroke?

A stroke begins when the pen (or any other writing device) comes in contact with the paper. The stroke ends when the pen separates from the paper.

❑ Why use brushes to write?

Traditionally, Japanese was written with brushes. This book – and almost any book that teaches Japanese writing – uses the brush-written style for the Japanese characters. The brush-written style best represents how the characters should be written.

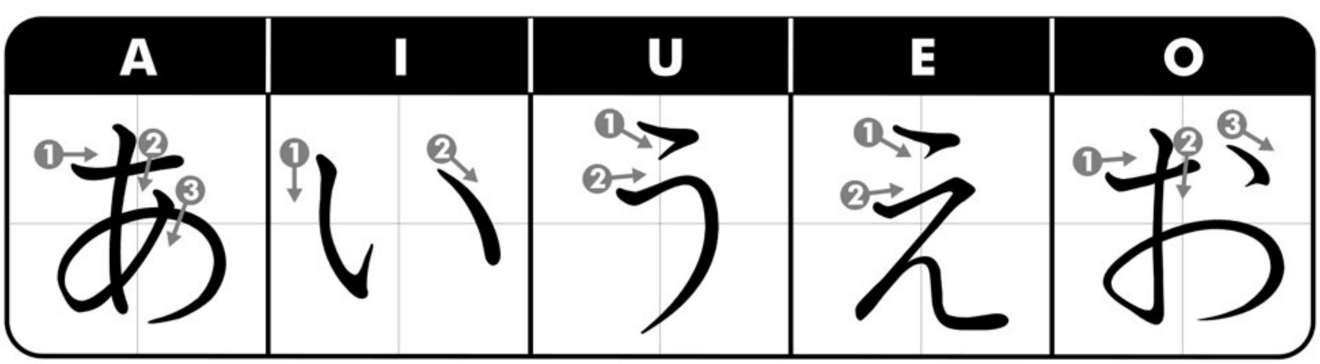
❑ Different types of brush strokes

There are three types of strokes. For ease of understanding we have named them *fade out*, *dead stop* and *bounce fade*. Whether writing with a brush, pen, or pencil, make sure that you pay attention to the stroke type. This will ensure that your writing is neat and proper.



あ New Hiragana あたらしい ひらがな

The first five hiragana to learn are listed below. Notice the different stroke types. Make sure you learn the correct stroke order and stroke type.



as in f<u>a</u>ther	as in s<u>ee</u>	as in z<u>oo</u>	as in m<u>e</u>n	as in b<u>oa</u>t

あ Various Styles スタイル

Look at the various possible styles for the hiragana in this lesson. Write each symbol as neatly as you can, then compare it to the different versions below.

あいうえお
あいうえお
あいうえお
あいうえお
あいうえお

❑ The importance of the various styles

It is important to always study the different styles of each character in the Various Styles section of the lessons to see what is allowed when writing. Remember that there are small differences between how the characters will look when writing with a brush and writing with a pen or pencil.

あ Writing Points かくポイント

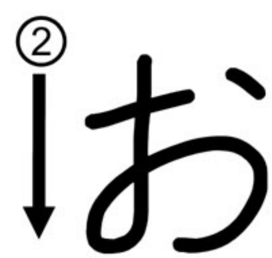
❑ The difference between あ (a) and お (o)

Be careful not to mix up あ and お. The second stroke of あ is curved while the second stroke for お is straight until the loop.

more curved than お and not connected to the loop.



straighter than あ and connected to the loop.



❑ Writing left-to-right and top-to-bottom

Before World War II, Japanese publications were written with each line going from top to bottom as shown in style 2 below. In modern Japan, both styles are common. Many times the style used is based solely on design choice, and in some cases (such as writing an e-mail) only style 1 is possible. Many Japanese writing books for children will use style 2. Even though *Japanese From Zero!* contains only style 1, both styles are acceptable.

Style 1

昔々あるところに
子供のいない老夫婦が
住んでいました。

Style 2

昔々あるところに
子供のいない老夫婦が
住んでいました。

あ Writing Practice れんしゅう

To practice correct stroke order, first trace the light gray characters, then write each character six times for practice.

a	あ	あ						
i	い	い						
u	う	う						
e	え	え						
o	お	お						

あ Word Practice ことばの れんしゅう

Fill in the appropriate hiragana in the blanks for each word.

1. ___ka___san (mother)
   o a

2. ___ ___ (house)
   i e

3. ___to___san (father)
   o u

4. ___ka ___ (red)
   a i

5. ___mo___to (younger sister)
   i u

6. ka___ (to buy)
   u

7. ___sagi (rabbit)
   u

8. ___npitsu (pencil)
   e

9. ___ne___san (older sister)
   o e

10. ___moshiro___ (interesting)
    o i

11. ___su (chair)
    i

12. ___kiru (to wake up)
    o

あ Words You Can Write かける ことば

Write the following words using the hiragana that you just learned. This is a great way to increase your Japanese vocabulary.

え (a painting)	☐ ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐
いい (good)	☐☐ ☐☐ ☐☐ ☐☐
おい (nephew)	☐☐ ☐☐ ☐☐ ☐☐

あい
(love)

えい
(a ray fish)

いいえ
(no)

おおい
(many)

あう
(to meet)

うえ
(up)

いう
(to say)

いえ
(house)

あお
(blue)

あ Everyday Hiragana Words にちじょうの ことば



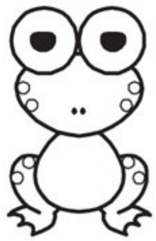
あ kachan
baby



い nu
dog



う shi
cow



ka え ru
frog



お koru
to get mad



う chu う
space

あ Hiragana Matching ひらがな マッチング

Connect the dots between each hiragana and the correct ro–maji.

お・	・a
う・	・o
え・	・u
い・	・e
あ・	・i

1 Lesson Activities

❑ Question and answer

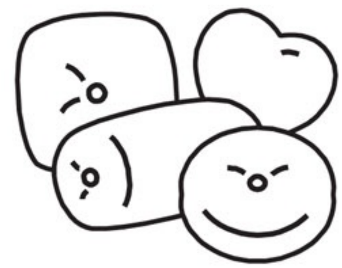
Answer the following questions by looking at the pictures. You can check your answers in the answer key for this lesson.

1. Nan desu ka?



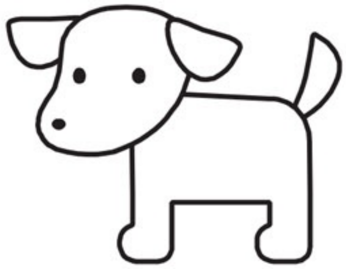
Answer: ____________________

2. Taoru desu ka?



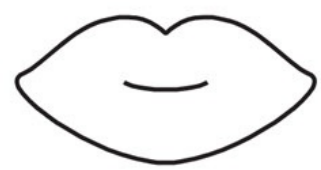
Answer: ____________________

3. Nan desu ka?



Answer: ____________________

4. Hana desu ka?



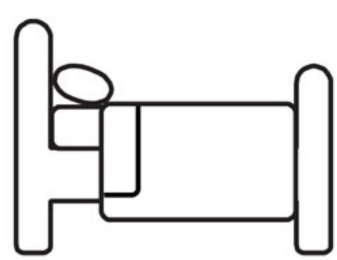
Answer: ____________________

5. Tanaka san desu ka?



Answer: ____________________

6. Nan desu ka?



Answer: ____________________

❑ Japanese translation

Translate the following conversation into English.

1.	
Tanaka san:	Nan desu ka. Mo う fu desu ka.
Kobayashi san:	Mo う い chido い tte kudasa い.
Tanaka san:	Mo う fu desu ka.
Kobayashi san:	いいえ, taoru desu.
Tanaka san:	
Kobayashi san:	
Tanaka san:	
Kobayashi san:	

❑ English translation

Translate the following conversation into Japanese.

1.	
Kouichi:	Are you Masumi?
Yasuko:	No, I am Yasuko. Are you Yuusuke?
Kouichi:	No, I am Kouichi.
Kouichi:	
Masumi:	
Kouichi:	

❑ What would you say?

What would you say in the following situations? Write the answer in Japanese.

1. When you want someone to repeat what they said:

____

2. When you meet someone for the first time:

____

3. When you want someone to guess your age:

____

4. When you ask someone if he is Mr. Nakamura:

____

5. When you ask someone to speak slower:

____

1 Drill ドリル

Translate the following sentences. If you know what they mean, congratulations! You're already learning Japanese! If you don't know what they mean, we recommend that you review the lesson up to this point before continuing.

1. Nan desu ka.
2. Wakarimasu ka.
3. Ha い, wakarimasu.
4. い nu desu ka.
5. Makura desu ka.
6. いいえ、neko desu.
7. Wakarimasen.
8. Hajimemashite.

1 Sentence Building ぶんのつくり

In each lesson we will build on a previous sentence. Watch it grow and transform each time new concepts are introduced.

Nan desu ka.
What is it?

Lesson
2
Level ①

Working with a Topic
Which one?



2 About This Lesson このレッスンについて

Before The Lesson

1. Be able to write and read あいうえお.
2. Understand how to use *desu* and the particle *ka*.

Lesson Goals

1. Learn how to work with a topic in simple sentences.
2. Learn how to use the topic marker *wa*.

From The Teachers

1. Remember the phrases "Dore desu ka" and "Docchi desu ka"
2. Memorize the ***ko so a do*** pattern. It'll come in handy later.

2 New Words あたらしい ことば

Progressive	Kana	Kanji	English
dore	どれ	どれ	which one (three or more)
kore	これ	これ	this one
sore	それ	それ	that one
あ re	あれ	あれ	that one over there
docchi	どっち	どっち	which one (two items)
kocchi	こっち	こっち	this one
socchi	そっち	そっち	that one
あ cchi	あっち	あっち	that one over there
retasu	レタス	レタス	lettuce
banana	バナナ	バナナ	banana
yasa い	やさい	野菜	vegetable
furu–tsu	フルーツ	フルーツ	fruit

kudamono	くだもの	果物	fruit
sushi	すし	寿司	sushi
pen	ペン	ペン	pen
kuruma	くるま	車	car
konpyu–ta–	コンピューター	コンピューター	computer
hon	ほん	本	book
zasshi	ざっし	雑誌	magazine

2 New Phrases あたらしい かいわ

At this point, don't worry about the grammar of the New Phrases; simply memorizing the phrases will be more beneficial at this point.

1. Can you speak Japanese? — Nihongo ga hanasemasu ka.
2. Can you speak English? — えい go ga hanasemasu ka.
3. A little. — Sukoshi.
4. Not at all. — Zenzen.
5. I am studying Japanese. — Nihongo o benkyou shiteimasu.

2 Culture Clip: Sushi and Sashimi

Many foreigners to Japan don't know the difference between sushi and sashimi. Sushi is raw or cooked fish, eggs, or vegetables on rice. It is placed on top of a fist-full of rice, and normally between the fish and rice there is some *wasabi*. *Wasabi* is a Japanese horseradish. It is very pungent. Sashimi is just sliced raw fish. (Try it – you might like it!)



Sushi is raw fish on rice



Sashimi is sliced raw fish

2 Cool Tools クール・ツール

In Japanese, there is a pattern of words that comes up many times. It is the ***ko so a do*** pattern. In this lesson there are two ***ko so a do*** patterns: **ko**re, **so**re, **a**re, **do**re, and **ko**cchi, **so**cchi, **a**cchi, **do**cchi. Notice that each word starts with *ko~*, *so~*, *a~* or *do~*. The following chart shows the distance relation of these words to the speaker.

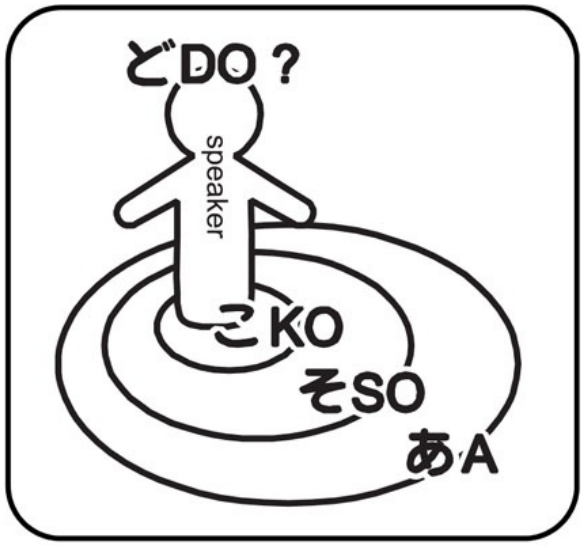
Since the four words in a *ko-so-a-do* group are simillar in sound, they are easy to mix up. The diagram on the right will help you remember the relation of each word in the group to the speaker. Remember this diagram, because there are more *ko-so-a-do* groups coming up.

ko – Close enough to touch

so – Sort of close, but not enough to touch

a – In the distance. Definitely not close.

do – Question word.



2 Grammar ぶんぽう

❑ The topic marker *wa*

The particle *wa* is used to mark the topic of the sentence. It can be thought to mean, "Speaking of (the) ~," or "As for (the) ~," but it does not have any meaning in English. Generally, everything that comes before *wa* is the topic or part of the topic. Everything after the *wa* describes or asks a question about the topic.

[topic] + wa + [question or description]

Sentence Structure ぶんけい	
Tomorrow / Monday / is あshita **wa** getsuyoうbi desu. (wa = topic marker)	Tomorrow is Monday.

Yukari-san **wa** nihonjin desu. (Yukari — Japanese — is; wa = topic marker)	Yukari is Japanese.

Banana **wa** kiいro desu. (Bananas — yellow — are; wa = topic marker)	Bananas are yellow.

❑ Using *wa* in a variety of sentences

Remember that *wa* is used to mark the topic of a sentence. Read the examples to see how *wa* can be applied to the words that you already know. Don't forget that the word before the *wa* is the topic, and everything after *wa* is asking a question about or describing the topic.

Example Q&A

1. Kore wa nan desu ka. Sore wa kagami desu.	What is this? That is a mirror.
2. Sore wa nan desu ka. Sore wa pen desu. あ re wa banana desu.	What is that? That is a pen. That over there is a banana.
3. Kore wa yasa い desu ka. いいえ、sore wa furu–tsu desu.	Is this a vegetable? No, that is a fruit.
4. Banana wa nan desu ka. Banana wa furu–tsu desu.	What is a banana? A banana is a fruit.
5. Retasu wa furu–tsu desu ka. いいえ、retasu wa yasa い desu.	Is lettuce a fruit? No, lettuce is a vegetable.

❑ The question words *dore* and *docchi*

Dore and *docchi* both mean “which one?” *Dore* is used with groups of three or more. If there are only two items, *docchi* is used.

[*topic*] + wa dore desu ka
[*topic*] + wa docchi desu ka
Which one is the/a [*topic*]?

If there are three or more items, *dore* is used.

1. Kuruma wa dore desu ka. — Which one is the car?
2. Furu–tsu wa dore desu ka. — Which one is a fruit?
3. Yasa い wa dore desu ka. — Which one is a vegetable?

If there are only two items, *docchi* is used.

1. Kuruma wa docchi desu ka. — Which one is the car?
2. Furu–tsu wa docchi desu ka. — Which one is a fruit?
3. Yasa い wa docchi desu ka. — Which one is a vegetable?

❑ Following the same pattern when answering

Notice that the answers and the questions in the example Q&A below follow the same sentence pattern. When answering questions, remember that *90% of the answer is in the question.*

Also, when the question has *~cchi* in it, the answer should not change to *~re*. Try to keep response sentences in the same format as their question sentences.

Example Q&A

Question:	Kuruma	wa	dore	desu	ka.	Which one is a car?
Answer:	Kuruma	wa	kore	desu.		The car is this one.

Question:	Banana	wa	nan	desu	ka.	What is a banana?
Answer:	Banana	wa	furu–tsu	desu.		A banana is a fruit.

Question:	Kagami	wa	dore	desu	ka.	Which one is a mirror?
Answer:	Kagami	wa	sore	desu.		That one is a mirror.

Question:	Mado	wa	docchi	desu	ka.	Which one is a window?
Answer:	Mado	wa	あ cchi	desu.		That one over there is a window.

❑ Using what you know to learn more

If you don't know a word, use the Japanese you know to ask someone what the word is. You can use the following sentence to ask what something is. For example, let's say that you don't know what え npitsu means:

Examples

1. え npitsu wa <u>nan</u> desu ka?
   What is "enpitsu"?

2. え npitsu wa pencil desu.
   Enpitsu is a pencil.

2 Speaking Naturally しぜんに はなすこと

❑ Dropping the topic of a sentence

It's very common in Japanese to drop the topic of a conversation once it has been introduced. In English, we constantly restate the topic directly or use "he", "she", "they" as a substitute. Spoken Japanese is much more like a match of tennis.

In Japanese, a topic is served and then discussed back and forth. Normally a topic is not mentioned again until a new topic is served.

To illustrate this, look at the following statements about my friend Michiko:

1. My friend is Michiko.
2. She lives in Japan.
3. She is 18 years old.
4. She is a college student.

In English, the topic "My friend" is introduced in the first sentence. Then in each following sentence, "she" is used to continually restate the topic. In Japanese, it's more natural to not say "she" over and over again. Instead, what would be considered incomplete sentences in English are used. This makes for much more natural conversation.

The English equivalent if spoken in Japanese would look like this:

1. My friend is Michiko.	Watashi no tomodachi wa Michiko san desu.
2. Lives in Japan.	Nihon ni sunde い masu.
3. Is 18 years old.	Ju う hassa い desu.
4. Is a college student.	Da い gakuse い desu.

As you read the example Q&A in the next section, look for places where the topic is NOT repeated.

2 Q&A しつもんと こたえ E→J

1. **Which one is it? (four items)** — **Dore desu ka.**
   It is this one. — Kore desu.
   It is that one. — Sore desu.
   It is that one over there. — あ re desu.

2. **What is this?** — **Kore wa nan desu ka.**
   This is a pillow. — Kore wa makura desu.
   This is a computer. — Kore wa konpyu–ta– desu.
   It's a blanket. — Mo う fu desu.

3. **Is this a vegetable?** — **Kore wa yasa い desu ka.**
   Yes, it's a vegetable. — Ha い, yasa い desu.
   No, it's a fruit. — いいえ, furu–tsu desu.
   Yes, it's lettuce. — Ha い, retasu desu.

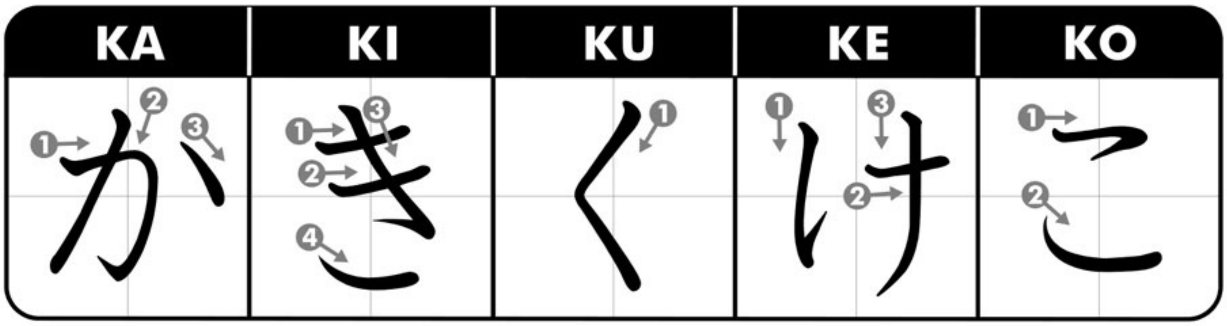
4. **Which one a vegetable? (two items)** — **Yasa い wa docchi desu ka.**
   This one is. — Kocchi desu.
   That one is. — Socchi desu.
   I don't know. — Wakarimasen.

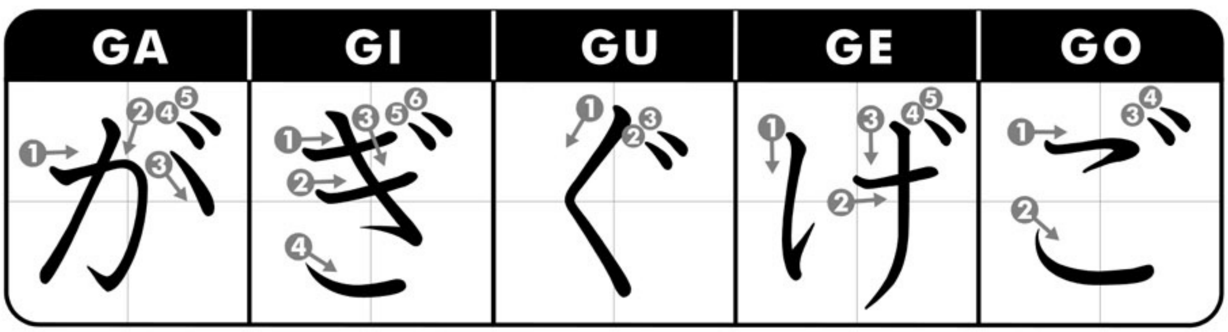
5. **What is that?** — **Sore wa nan desu ka.**
   That is soap. — Sore wa sekken desu.
   This is a towel. — Kore wa taoru desu.
   It's a futon. — Futon desu.

Hiragana かきくけこ

か New Hiragana あたらしい ひらがな

Make sure you learn the correct stroke order since correct stroke order will mean neater characters when writing quickly.





か Various Styles スタイル

Look at the various possible styles for the hiragana in this lesson. Write each symbol as neatly as you can, then compare it to the different versions below.

かきくけこ
かきくけこ
かきくけこ
かきくけこ
かきくけこ

がぎぐげご
がぎぐげご
がぎぐげご
がぎぐげご
がぎぐげご

か Writing Points かくポイント

❑ The dakuten

The only difference between *ka ki ku ke ko* and *ga gi gu ge go* are the last two small strokes up in the right hand corner. Those strokes are called *dakuten*. You will see them often in future lessons.

❑ Writing が (ga) the correct way

When adding *dakuten* to か (ka) to make it が (ga), make sure that they are shorter than the third stroke. The third stroke of が should always be longer than the *dakuten*.

が	**INCORRECT**
が	**INCORRECT**
が	**CORRECT**

❑ The different versions of き (ki)

You may have noticed in the *Various Styles* section of this lesson that there are two versions of *ki*. It is your choice which version you use. You will see both versions in Japan.

き	This version has four strokes and is very common when writing. Many Japanese people write using this version.
き	This version has combined the third and fourth strokes into one stroke. It is very common in printed text such as books and magazines.

か Writing Practice れんしゅう

To practice correct stroke order, first trace the light gray characters, then write each character six times for practice.

ka	か	か						
ki	き	き						
ku	く	く						
ke	け	け						
ko	こ	こ						

ga	が	が						
gi	ぎ	ぎ						
gu	ぐ	ぐ						
ge	げ	げ						
go	ご	ご						

か Word Practice ことばの れんしゅう

Fill in the appropriate hiragana in the blanks for each word.

1. ___い ro (yellow)
   ki
2. ___ ___ (to listen)
   ki ku
3. ___minari (lightning)
   ka
4. ___う___n (air force)
   ku gu
5. ___ ___ (moss)
   ko ke
6. い___ (to go)
   ku
7. ___mushi (caterpillar)
   ke
8. ___う___う (airport)
   ku ko
9. ___n い ro (silver color)
   gi
10. ___n'ni___ (muscle)
    ki ku
11. ___ ___ (afternoon)
    go go
12. ___お ri (ice)
    ko

か Words You Can Write かける ことば

Write the following words using the hiragana that you just learned. This is a great way to increase your Japanese vocabulary.

き
(tree)

かく
(to write)

いか
(squid)

かぎ
(key)

かお
(face)

かい
(shell)

あか
(red)

ごご
(afternoon)

がいこく
(foreign country)

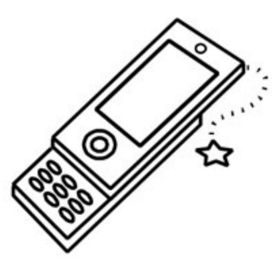
おおきい
(big)

くうこう
(airport)

か Everyday Hiragana Words にちじょうの ことば



tsu き
the moon



けい ta い denwa
cell phone



かぎ
key



cho き n ba こ
safe, piggy bank



かく
to write



su いか
watermelon

か Hiragana Matching ひらがな マッチング

Connect the dots between each hiragana and the correct ro–maji.

き ・	・ i
い ・	・ go
く ・	・ ka
か ・	・ ki
え ・	・ ku
ご ・	・ ke
け ・	・ e

2 Lesson Activities

❑ Question and answer 1

Answer the following questions in Japanese by looking at the pictures.

1. こ re wa nan desu か?



Answer: ______________________________

2. こ re wa nan desu か?



Answer: ______________________________

3. こ re wa かが mi desu か?



Answer: ______________________________

4. こ re wa yasa い desu か?



Answer: ______________________________

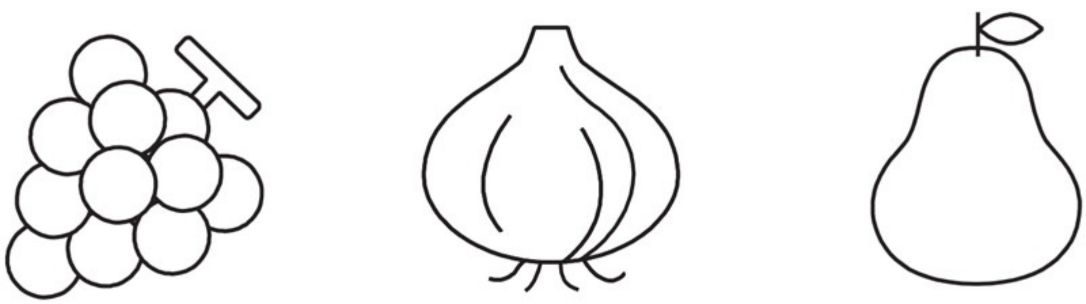
❑ Question and answer 2

Circle the correct item and answer with *こ re desu* or *こ cchi desu*.

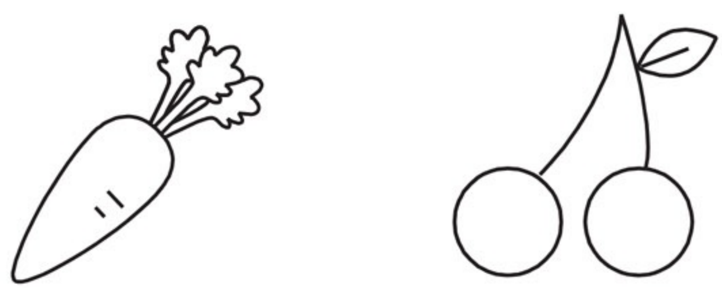
1. Hon wa dore desu か?



2. Yasa い wa dore desu か?



3. Furu–tsu wa docchi desu か?



❑ Question and answer 3

Fill in the question being asked by the girl (Q:) and the answer given by the woman (A:) in the following pictures. (Write your answers in Japanese)

1.



Q: ______________________________

A: ______________________________

2.



Q: ______________________________

A: ______________________________

3.



Q: ______________________________

A: ______________________________

4.



Q: ______________________________

A: ______________________________

❑ Japanese translation

Translate the following conversation into English.

1.	
Sato こ san: **Sho う ta san:** **Sato こ san:** **Sho う ta san:**	Sore wa hon desu か. いいえ, zasshi desu. Mo う い chido い tte く dasa い. Nan desu か. こ re wa zasshi desu.
Sato こ san:	
Sho う ta san:	
Sato こ san:	
Sho う ta san:	

❑ English translation

Translate the following conversation into Japanese.

1.	
Japanese person: **American person:** **Japanese person:** **American person:** **Japanese person:**	Can you speak Japanese? A little. What is that over there? That is a car. Thank you.
Japanese person:	
American person:	
Japanese person:	
American person:	
Japanese person:	

2 Drill ドリル

Translate the following sentences. If you’re not sure what they mean, we recommend that you review the lesson up to this point before continuing.

1. Retasu wa nan desu か。
2. Hon wa socchi desu.
3. Tada い ma.
4. Rin ご wa furu–tsu desu.
5. こ re wa yasa い desu か。
6. Nihon ご o benkyo う shiteimasu.
7. あ re wa かが mi desu.
8. く ruma wa dore desu か。
9. Yasa い desu.
10. Nihon ごが hanasemasu か。

2 Sentence Building ぶんのつくり

In each lesson we build on a previous sentence. Watch it grow and transform each time new concepts are introduced.

The sentence from the previous lesson was: Nan desu か。 (What is it?). In this lesson we learned how to attach a topic to the question. Let's look at the new sentence:

こ re wa nan desu か。
What is this?

Vocabulary Groups

C family

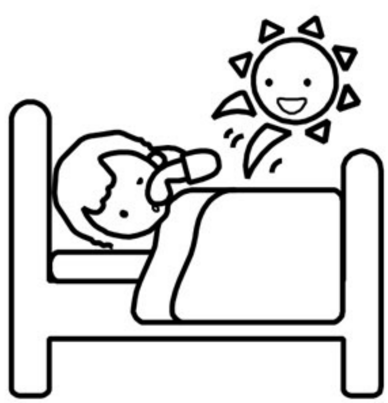
Progressive	Kana	Kanji	English
おかあ san	おかあさん	お母さん	mother
お to う san	おとうさん	お父さん	father
お ji い san	おじいさん	おじいさん	grandfather
お ba あ san	おばあさん	おばあさん	grandmother
あか chan	あかちゃん	赤ちゃん	baby

D greetings and farewells

Progressive	Kana	Kanji	English
あ ri が to う	ありがとう	ありがとう	thank you, thanks
お hayo うご za い masu	おはよう ございます	おはよう ございます	good morning
お yasuminasa い	おやすみなさい	お休みなさい	good night
こ nnichiwa	こんにちは	今日は	good afternoon
sayo う nara	さようなら	さようなら	good bye, farewell



おとうさん



おはよう ございます



おかあさん

Lesson 3 Level ①

Possession

Whose is this?



3 About This Lesson このレッスンについて

Before The Lesson

1. Be able to write and read かきくけこ, がぎぐげご
2. Understand how to use the question words *dore* and *docchi* and the topic marker *wa*
3. Review vocabulary groups C and D.

Lesson Goals

1. Learn to show possession using the particle *no*
2. Learn how to use the subject marker が

From The Teachers

1. It's common to mix up *dare* (who) and *dore* (which one). It's also common to mix up *watashi* (me) and *あ nata* (you). Try to avoid these mistakes.

3 New Words あたらしい ことば

Progressive	Hiragana	Kanji	English
dare	だれ	誰	who?
watashi	わたし	私	I, me (male or female)
bo く	ぼく	僕	I, me (males only)
あ nata	あなた	貴方	you
か nojo	かのじょ	彼女	her, she, girlfriend
か re	かれ	彼	him, he, boyfriend
nama え	なまえ	名前	name
tomodachi	ともだち	友達	friend
tabun	たぶん	多分	maybe
が kko う	がっこう	学校	school

tori	とり	鳥	bird
sense い	せんせい	先生	teacher
nihon ご no sense い	にほんごの せんせい	日本語の先生	Japanese teacher

3 New Phrases あたらしい かいわ

1. **So う desu.**

   That's right.

   This phrase is used to affirm that something said is true or correct. It doesn't need to always be translated as “That’s right.” It can be translated into a variety of similar phrases such as: "You are right," "It is," or even just simply "Yes."

2. **Chi がい masu.**

   That's wrong.

   This phrase is used when something is false or incorrect. It doesn’t always have to be translated as “That’s wrong.” It can mean a variety of similar phrases such as: "It's different," "It isn't," and "No."

3 Culture Clip: Interesting information about bo く



bo く

The word *bo* く means “me” or “I,” and normally only males use it. It can be masculine or cute depending on the usage. It should only be used in casual conversation.

Also, when talking to little boys, it is very common to call them *bo* く when their name is not known. For example, if someone is talking to a little boy and you hear them say, “Bo く wa nansa い desu か,” it means “How old are you?” and not “How old am I?”

Can girls use *bo* く?

Even though *bo* く is normally a male word, you will hear it in songs sung by female singers. This sometimes done when the girl is singing from a male perspective or when the girl is trying to sound boyish. Despite this, you will probably never hear a girl use *bo* く in conversation. However, you will often hear young girls say *あ tashi* as an informal and cute way of saying *wata し*.

3 Grammar ぶんぽう

The question word *dare*

You can use the question word *dare* just as *nan*, *dore* and *docchi* are used.

Example Q&A

1. Nan desu か。 — What is it?
   く ruma desu. — It is a car.

2. Dore desu か。 — Which one is it?
   Sore desu. — It is that one.

3. Dare desu か。 — Who is it?
   Tana か san desu. — It is Mr. Tanaka.

Using *wa* with *dare*

As we learned in lesson 2, you can specify a topic using the topic marker *wa*. Look at how the new question word *dare* (who) is used.

Example Q&A

1. あ nata wa dare desu か。 — Who are you?
   Watashi wa こ bayashi desu. — I am Kobayashi.

2. か re wa dare desu か。 — Who is he?
   か re wa tomodachi desu. — He is a friend.

3. Sense い wa dare desu か。 — Who is the teacher?
   Yamada san desu. — It's Yamada san.

4. Tana か san wa dare desu か。 — Who is Tanaka san?
   Nihon ご no sense い desu. — (She's / He's) a Japanese teacher.

❑ Assuming the topic based on context

Japanese conversation relies heavily on the context or "circumstances" of the conversation. Let's look at the sentence **Dare desu か** which in the prior example was translated as "Who is it?". You might have noticed that there isn't any specific topic in this sentence.

It's not uncommon for sentences to lack a topic in Japanese. And as stated in the prior lesson, it isn't natural to continually say "he, she, you, I" in Japanese as we do in English.

Look at how the translation of *Dare desu か* changes depending on the context.

Example Conversations

1. **Context:** Looking at an unkown person in a photograph.
   A: Dare desu か。 — Who is this person?
   B: Tana か san desu. — It is Mr. Tanaka.

   The topic "this person" is assumed and doesn't need to be said.

2. **Context:** Someone you don't know calls you on the phone.
   A: Dare desu か。 — Who are you?
   B: Tana か desu. — It's Tanaka.

   You could have added **あ nata wa** in front of the question, but the person knows you're speaking directly to him, so the topic can be dropped.

3. **Context:** Looking at a girl in the hallway.
   A: Dare desu か。 — Who is she?
   B: Mayumi desu. — She is Mayumi.

   You could have added **か nojo wa** in front of both of these sentences, but the conversation would not sound natural. The "she" part of the conversation does not need to be stated since the topic is obvious.

❑ Starting sentences with or without question words

In English it's common to start sentences with a question word. Look at the following English sentences that start with question words:

Example Sentences

1. <u>What</u> is this?
2. <u>Which one</u> is your car?
3. <u>Who</u> are you?

Since it's so common to start sentences in English with a question word, many students of Japanese mistakenly believe you can always do the same thing in Japanese, but this is not the case.

In the following examples you will notice that the Japanese sentences DO NOT start with a question word even though the English sentences do. The question words have been underlined in both sentences.

Example Sentences

1. こ re wa <u>nan</u> desu か。
   <u>What</u> is this?

2. く ruma wa <u>dore</u> desu か。
   <u>Which one</u> is a car?

3. Tana か san wa <u>dare</u> desu か。
   <u>Who</u> is Tanaka?

❑ How to start a sentence with a question word using が

Even though you don't generally start a Japanese sentence with a question word, there are times when this is acceptable or necessary.

When a question word is the topic of the sentence, or when a question word is the FIRST word in a sentence, the topic/subject marker が instead of *wa* <u>must</u> be used.

However, if the items you are talking about have already been introduced or are in front of you, you can start a sentence with a question word as the topic.

In the following examples, the question words have been underlined in both sentences.

Example Sentences

1. <u>Dore</u> が く ruma desu か。
   <u>Which one</u> is a car?

2. <u>Dare</u> が Tana か san desu か。
   <u>Who</u> is Tanaka?

Remember that the answer must follow the same pattern as the question, and therefore the answer must also use が as the topic/subject marker.

Example Conversations

1. A: Dore が く ruma desu か。	Which one is a car?
B: Sore が く ruma desu.	That's a car.
2. A: Dare が Tana か san desu か。	Who/which is Tanaka?
B: Tana か san が tomodachi desu.	Tanaka is a friend.

❑ Making words possessive with the particle *no*

It is easy to convert words into their possessive form by adding *no* after them.

Examples

mine	watashi no
mine	bo く no
yours	あ nata no
hers	か nojo no
his	か re no
whose	dare no

No also acts like the possessive ***'s*** in English when it follows a person's name and other words.

Examples

Akiko's	あきこ no
Jeff's	Jeffu no
Mr. Tanaka's	Tana か san no
Father's	お to う san no
Mother's	おかあ san no
Grandfather's	お ji い san no
Grandmother's	お ba あ san no

Using this concept in conversation is easy. If someone asks, **こ re wa dare no desu か** (Whose is this?) as they hold an object in their hand, you can use any of the following answers:

Examples Answers

1. Watashi no desu.	It's mine.
2. あ nata no desu.	It's yours.
3. Tana か san no desu.	It's Mr. Tanaka's.
4. か nojo no desu.	It's hers.
5. お ba あ san no desu.	It's grandmother's.
6. か re no desu.	It's his.
7. おかあ san no desu.	It's mother's.

❑ Showing possession of objects using *no*

In the prior grammar section, you learned that the particle ***no*** is used to change words into their possessive form. The possessive form can be used by itself or followed by another word to show ownership. Try thinking of ***no*** as the glue the holds nouns together. You add objects after the possessive form as follows:

Tanaka 's car it is Tanaかsan **no** くruma desu.	It is Tanaka's car.

Examples

my dog	watashi no い nu
your mother	あ nata no おかあ san
her cat	か nojo no ne こ
his dog	か re no い nu
father's pen	お to う san no pen

The particle ***no*** is not limited to linking only two items. It can be used to further clarify the object or item being discussed.

Examples

あ nata no か nojo no nama え	your girlfriend's name
おかあ san no ne こ no nama え	mother's cat's name

Now let's put your new knowledge of ***no*** into practice. These sentences may appear long at first, but they're using the simple grammar you've learned already.

Example Sentences

1. あ nata no か nojo no nama え wa nan desu か。
   What is your girlfriend's name?

2. Tana か san no おかあ san wa nansai desu か。
   How old is Tanaka san's mother?

3. こ bayashi san no お to う san wa dare desu か。
   Who is Kobayashi san's father?

3 Q&A しつもんと こたえ E→J

1. **Who is it?** — **Dare desu か。**
   It's me. — Watashi desu.
   It's Hideko. — Hide こ desu.
   It's Mom. — おかあ san desu.

2. **Whose car is it?** — **Dare no く ruma desu か。**
   It's my car. — Watashi no く ruma desu.
   It's mine. — Watashi no desu.
   It's Mr. Takada's car. — Ta か da san no く ruma desu.
   I don't know. — Wa か rimasen.

3. **Which one is your rabbit?** — **Docchi が あ nata no う sa ぎ desu か。**
   That one over there is my rabbit. — あ cchi が watashi no う sa ぎ desu.
   It's that one. — Socchi desu.

4. **Is this your car?** — **こ re wa あ nata no く ruma desu か。**
   Yes, it is. — Ha い, so う desu.
   No, it's my friend's car. — いいえ、tomodachi no く ruma desu.
   No, it's her car. — いいえ、か nojo no く ruma desu.
   No, it's hers. — いいえ、か nojo no desu.

5. **Which one is your bird?** — **あ nata no tori wa dore desu か。**
   My bird is that one. — Bo く no tori wa sore desu.

3 Q&A しつもんと こたえ J→E

1. **あ nata no ne こ wa dore desu か。** — **Which one is your cat?**
   Watashi no ne こ wa sore desu. — My cat is that one.
   Watashi no ne こ wa あ re desu. — My cat is that one over there.

2. **おかあ san no nama え wa nan desu か。** — **What is (your) mother's name?**
   Maria desu. — It's Maria.
   Yoshi こ desu. — It's Yoshiko.

3. **Sore wa か nojo no taoru desu か。** — **Is that her towel?**
   いいえ、か re no taoru desu. — No, it's his towel.
   いいえ、Mami こ san no taoru desu. — No, it's Mamiko's towel.

4. **あ nata no tomodachi no い nu no nama え wa nan desu か。** — **What is your friend's dog's name?**
   い nu no nama え wa Pochi desu. — The dog's name is Pochi.
   Wa か rimasen. — I don't know.

3 Reading Comprehension どっかい

Read the sentences below. Use the information to answer the reading comprehension questions later in this lesson.

① Watashi no nama え wa Honda desu.

② Sanju うご sa い desu.

③ Watashi no か nojo no nama え wa Terada desu.

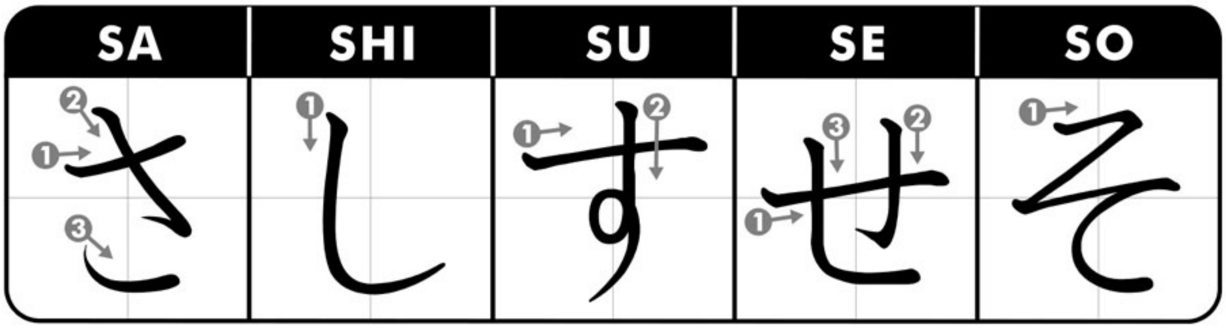
④ か nojo wa niju う kyu う sa い desu.

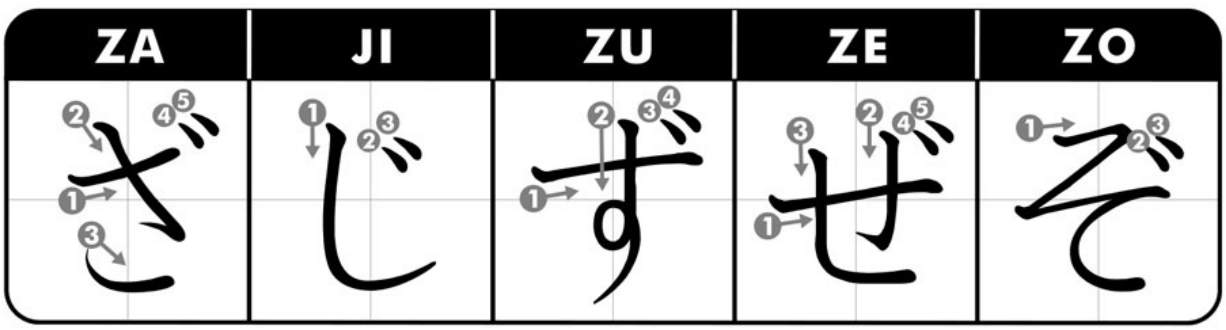


Hiragana さしすせそ

さ New Hiragana あたらしい ひらがな

Make sure you learn the correct stroke order since correct stroke order will mean neater characters when writing quickly.





さ Various Styles スタイル

Look at the various possible styles for the hiragana in this lesson. Write each symbol as neatly as you can, then compare it to the different versions below.

さしすせそ
さしすせそ
さしすせそ
さしすせそ
さしすせそ

ざじずぜぞ
ざじずぜぞ
ざじずぜぞ
ざじずぜぞ
ざじずぜぞ

さ Writing Points かくポイント

❑ The different versions of さ (sa) and そ (so)

You may have noticed in the *Various Styles* section of this lesson that there are two versions of *sa* and *so*. You can write whichever version you choose, so long as it is legible.

Different versions of さ (sa)	
さ	This version has three strokes and is very common when writing. Most Japanese people use this version when writing.
さ	This version has combined the second and third strokes into one stroke. It is very common in printed text.

Different versions of そ (so)	
そ	This version has two strokes and is common when writing. Many Japanese people write using this version.
そ	This version similar to version above except that the first and second stroke are touching.
そ	This version has only one stroke and is very common in printed text. It is also acceptable for writing.

さ Writing Practice れんしゅう

To practice correct stroke order, first trace the light gray characters, then write each character six times for practice.

sa	さ	さ						
shi	し	し						
su	す	す						
se	せ	せ						
so	そ	そ						

za	ざ	ざ						
ji	じ	じ						
zu	ず	ず						
ze	ぜ	ぜ						
zo	ぞ	ぞ						

さ Word Practice ことばの れんしゅう

Fill in the appropriate hiragana in the blanks for each word.

1. mura___き (purple)
   sa
2. ___ ___ (to point)
   sa su
3. ___ro (white)
   shi
4. ___tsugyo う (graduation)
   so
5. ___ ___ (sushi)
   su shi
6. ___か n (time)
   ji
7. ___ ru (monkey)
   sa
8. お___い___n (grandfather)
   ji sa
9. あ___ (sweat)
   se
10. あ n___n (safety)
    ze
11. ___う (elephant)
    zo
12. げ n___い (currently, at present)
    za

さ Words You Can Write かける ことば

Write the following words using the hiragana that you have just learned. This is a great way to increase your Japanese vocabulary.

しか
(deer)

すし
(sushi)

すずしい
(cool)

おそい
(slow/late)

あし
(legs/feet)

いす
(chair)

すき
(like)

すうじ
(number)

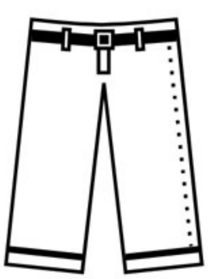
すいか
(watermelon)

せかい
(world)

かず
(numbers)

うし
(cow)

さ Everyday Hiragana Words にちじょうの ことば



ず bon
pants



し nbun
newspaper



tsu くえ
desk



さ mu い
cold



wa くせい
planet



すし
sushi

さ Hiragana Matching ひらがな マッチング

Connect the dots between each hiragana and the correct ro–maji.

す・	・za
し・	・su
え・	・ku
こ・	・shi
ざ・	・i
あ・	・e
く・	・ko
い・	・a

3 Lesson Activities

❑ Question and answer 1

Answer the following questions in Japanese by looking at the pictures.

1. Dare de すか?



Answer: ______________________________

2. Jenny さ n de すか?



Answer: ______________________________

3. Dare no tori de すか?



Answer: ______________________________

4. Dare no おかあさ n de すか?



Answer: ______________________________

❑ Question and answer 2

Answer the following questions in Japanese as if they were being asked to you directly. Use the hiragana that you have learned when writing your answers.

1. あ nata no nama え wa nan de すか。

____

2. お ba あさ n no nama え wa nan de すか。

____

3. おかあさ n no く ruma wa nan de すか。

____

4. おじいさ n wa nan さい de すか。

____

5. お to うさ n wa nan さい de すか。

____

❑ Japanese translation

Translate the following conversation into English.

1.	
こ baya し さ n: **Na か ya さ n:**	こ re wa dare no hon de すか。 Wa か rima せ n, tabun Tana かさ n no hon de す.
こ baya し さ n:	
Na か ya さ n:	

❑ English translation

Translate the following conversation into Japanese.

1.	
Terada san: **Yamada san:** **Terada san:**	Are you Mr. Tanaka? No, I am Yamada. Who is Mr. Tanaka? Mr. Tanaka is Ms. Kobayashi's friend.
Terada san:	
Yamada san:	
Terada san:	

❑ Reading comprehension questions

Answer the following questions about the reading comprehension in this lesson.

1. Honda さ n no か nojo no nama え wa Tana かさ n de すか。

   ____

2. Terada さ n wa dare de すか。

   ____

3. Terada さ n wa Yamada さ n no か nojo de すか。

   ____

4. Terada さ n wa nan さい de すか。

   ____

❑ What would you say?

What would you say in the following situations?

1. when you are saying good bye

   ____

2. when you greet someone in the morning

   ____

3. when you don't know the answer to a question

   ____

4. when you want to show your thanks to someone

   ____

❑ Short dialogue

Mr. Yoshida saw Ms. Ueki on the street and they started a conversation.



Yo し da さ n: うえきさ n, こ nnichiwa.

うえきさ n: こ nnichiwa, Yo し da さ n.
お hi さし buri de す。
お to うさ n wa げ n き de すか?

Yo し da さ n: Ha い, げ n き de す。
(looking at the big bag Ueki san is holding)
そ re wa nan de すか?

うえきさ n: こ re wa kamera de す。
Wata し no shumi de す。

Yo し da さ n: すごい de す ne.

うえきさ n: Yo し da さ n no shumi wa nan de すか?

Yo し da さ n: Wata し no shumi wa gorufu de す。

New words and expressions in the dialogue

Progressive	**English**
お hi さし buri de す。	It's been a long time. / Long time no see.
_______wa げ n き de すか。	Is _______ healthy / doing fine? (Are you fine?)
げ n き de す。	They're fine. / I'm fine.
kamera	camera
shumi	hobby
すごい de す ne。	That's great. / That's awesome.
gorufu	golf

❑ Short dialogue activities

Practice reading the dialogue in pairs.
Change the dialogue to add your own hobbies (*shumi*) .

3 Drill ドリル

Translate the following sentences. If you're not sure what they mean, we recommend that you review the lesson up to this point.

1. こ re wa あ nata no ne こ de すか。
2. あ nata no tomodachi no nama え wa nan de すか。
3. いいえ、chi がい ma す。
4. そ re wa dare no く ruma de すか。
5. Tana かさ n wa wata し no tomodachi de す。

3 Sentence Building ぶんのつくり

In each lesson we build on a previous sentence. Watch it grow and transform each time new concepts are introduced. In this lesson we learned possession concepts. Let's look at the new sentence:

こ re wa あ nata no おかあさ n no く ruma de すか。
Is this your mother's car?

Compare how the sentence has changed from the prior lessons:

Lesson 1: Nan de すか。
What is it?

Lesson 2: こ re wa nan de すか。
What is this?

Vocabulary Groups

E animals

Progressive	Kana	Kanji	English
い nu	いぬ	犬	dog
ne こ	ねこ	猫	cat
ぞう	ぞう	象	elephant
う ma	うま	馬	horse
うさぎ	うさぎ	兎	rabbit
panda	パンダ	パンダ	panda
ne ず mi	ねずみ	鼠	mouse
raion	ライオン	ライオン	lion
き rin	きりん	麒麟	giraffe
うし	うし	牛	cow
さ ru	さる	猿	monkey
hitsu じ	ひつじ	羊	sheep
き tsune	きつね	狐	fox
く ma	くま	熊	bear


パンダ


うし


うさぎ

Lesson 4 Level ①

Colors and Adjectives

Making lists



4 About This Lesson このレッスンについて

Before The Lesson

1. Be able to write and read さしすせそ, ざじずぜぞ .
2. Understand how to use the question word *dare* and the particles *no* and が .
3. Review vocabulary group E.

Lesson Goals

1. Learn how to use the noun and adjective forms of colors.
2. Learn how to use the Japanese version of "and".

From The Teachers

1. Memorize the colors.
2. Make sure that you understand the different types of adjectives introduced in this lesson.

4 New Words あたらしい ことば

Progressive	Kana	Kanji	English
nani い ro	なにいろ	何色	what color?
い ro	いろ	色	color
あか	あか	赤	red
あお	あお	青	blue
く ro	くろ	黒	black
し ro	しろ	白	white
cha い ro	ちゃいろ	茶色	brown
きい ro	きいろ	黄色	yellow
orenji	オレンジ	オレンジ	orange

mura さき	むらさき	紫	purple
pinku	ピンク	ピンク	pink
guree	グレー	グレー	gray
ha いい ro	はいいろ	灰色	gray
mi ずい ro	みずいろ	水色	light blue
midori	みどり	緑	green
き n い ro	きんいろ	金色	gold
ぎ n い ro	ぎんいろ	銀色	silver
to う me い	とうめい	透明	clear

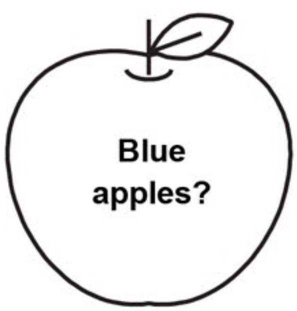
4 New Phrases あたらしい かいわ

1. Excuse me. / I'm sorry. す mima せ n.
2. I am sorry. / Please forgive me. ご men na さい。

3. What is it in Japanese? Nihon ご de nan de すか。
4. What is it in English? えいご de nan de すか。

5. It's __________ in English. えいご de ___________です。
6. It's __________ in Japanese. Nihon ご de ___________です。

4 Culture Clip: Green is Blue?



Japanese people sometimes refer to what we call "green" as "blue." For example, in Japan, when vegetables are not ripe they are referred to as blue, not green. A green apple isn't green – it's blue. Green traffic lights are called "blue" even though the colors used for traffic lights in Japan are exactly the same as in America. So keep this in mind when someone yells to you, "Hey, let's go! The light is *blue*!"

There is a prefecture in the northern part of Japan's main island Honshuu called Aomori, which literally means "blue forest." Well then, what color is the sky in Japan, you ask? Blue, of course!

4 Grammar ぶんぽう

❑ The particle *to*

To is the equivalent of English "and." It must come between every word in a list. ***To*** cannot be used to link sentences together.

Examples

1. あお to mura さき to pinku — blue, purple, and pink.
2. wata し to あ nata to tana かさ n — me, you and Tanaka san
3. い nu to ne こ to う ma to buta — a dog, a cat, a horse, and a pig

Example Sentences

1. Wata し no く ruma wa く ro to ぎ n い ro です。
   My car is black and sliver.

2. Tomodachi no ne こ wa cha い ro to し ro です。
   My friend's cat is brown and white.



rinご **to** すいか **to** banana



いnu **to** neこ **to** うさぎ

Making nouns into adjectives using *no*

Up until now, ***no*** has been used to mark possession. ***No*** is also used to create a "noun adjective" or what we call a "***no*** adjective". When ***no*** is added after a noun, that noun becomes an adjective. The noun that comes before the ***no*** describes the word that comes after the ***no***.

[noun 1] + no + [noun 2]

Examples

1. Japanese food
   nihon (Japan) + tabemono (food) = nihon no tabemono

2. American cars
   Amerika (America) + く ruma = Amerika no く ruma

3. Japanese book
   nihon ご (Japanese language) + hon (book) = nihon ご no hon

❑ Using colors to describe

In this lesson, the colors are introduced in their noun form. To make the color an adjective you must link the words with ***no***. To say "green car" in Japanese, you would say **mi ど ri no く ruma.** This type of adjective is called a ***no*** adjective. With the noun forms of colors you CANNOT say, for example, **mi ど ri く ruma** to mean "green car."

English	incorrect	correct
what color car?	nani い ro く ruma	nani い ro no く ruma
a white rabbit	shiro うさぎ	shiro no うさぎ
a brown monkey	cha い ro さ ru	cha い ro no さ ru
a black bear	く ro く ma	く ro no く ma
a green pillow	midori ma く ra	midori no ma く ra

Example Sentences

1. あか no く ruma wa あ nata no de す ka. — Is the red car yours?
2. Dare no pinku no いえ de すか。 — Whose pink house is that?
3. Pinku no ma く ra wa bo く no de す。 — The pink pillow is mine.

❑ い adjectives

Some of the colors also have an い adjective form. An い adjective always ends with い and never requires ***no*** when describing other words - it is simply placed in front of the word it is to modify. Only the following colors have い adjective forms:

4 Color Adjective Forms

Progressive	Kana	Kanji	English
あかい	あかい	赤い	red
あおい	あおい	青い	blue
く ro い	くろい	黒い	black
し ro い	しろい	白い	white
cha い ro い	ちゃいろい	茶色い	brown
きい ro い	きいろい	黄色い	yellow

Examples

1. あかい く ruma	a red car
2. あおい pen	a blue pen
3. cha い ro い ne こ	a brown cat
4. し ro い い nu	a white dog

Whether you use the い adjective or ***no*** adjective version of a color is your choice. Just remember that not all colors have an い adjective version.

English	い adjective	の adjective
a yellow giraffe	きい ro い き rin	きい ro no き rin
a blue car	あおい く ruma	あお no く ruma
a brown horse	cha い ro い う ma	cha い ro no う ma
a red fruit	あかい furu-tsu	あか no furu-tsu

4 Q&A しつもんと こたえ E→J

1. What color is it?	**Nani い ro de すか。**
It's black.	く ro de す。
It's pink.	Pinku de す。
It's purple and orange.	Mura さき to orenji de す。
2. What color car is it?	**Nani い ro no く ruma de すか。**
It's a green car.	Midori no く ruma de す。
It's a red and blue car.	あか to あお no く ruma de す。
It's a yellow car.	きい ro no く ruma de す。
3. Is your toothbrush blue?	**あ nata no haburashi wa あお de すか。**
No, mine is white.	いいえ、wa たし no wa し ro de す。
No, mine is yellow.	いいえ、wa たし no wa きい ro de す。
4. What color is this?	**こ re wa nani い ro de すか。**
This is blue.	こ re wa あお de す。
It's purple.	Mura さき de す。
5. Is your cat black and white?	**あ nata no ne こ wa く ro to し ro de すか。**
No, it is brown and grey.	いいえ、cha い ro to guree de す。

6. **Whose car is the silver car?** **ぎ n い ro no く ruma wa dare no de すか。**
Maybe it is Yoshida san's. Tabun Yo し da さ n no de す。

4 Q&A しつもんと こたえ J→E

1. **あか de すか。** **Is it red?**
Ha い、そう de す。 Yes, it is.
いいえ、chi がい ma す。 No, it's not.

2. **Mo う fu wa nani い ro de すか。** **What color is the blanket?**
し ro い de す。 It is white.
あかい de す。 It is red.
あお to midori de す。 It is blue and green.

3. **Ma く ra wa nani い ro de すか。** **What color is the pillow?**
Ma く ra wa midori de す。 The pillow is green.
Mura さき de す。 It is purple.
く ro de す。 It is black.
Wa か rima せ n. I don't know.

4. **Koppu wa cha い ro de すか。** **Is the cup brown?**
Ha い、そう de す。 Yes, it is.
いいえ、chi がい ma す。 No, it isn't.
いいえ、きい ro de す。 No, it is yellow.

5. **Cha い ro no う ma wa あ nata no de すか。** **Is the brown horse yours?**
いいえ、し ro no う ma de す。 No, it is the white horse.

6. **あ nata no おかあさ n no うさぎ wa nani い ro de すか。** **What color is your mother's rabbit?**
Wa か rima せ n. I don't know.
し ro to cha い ro de す。 It is white and brown.

4 Reading Comprehension どっかい

Read the sentences below. Use the information to answer the reading comprehension questions later in this lesson.

① Jun こさ n wa niju うごさい de す。

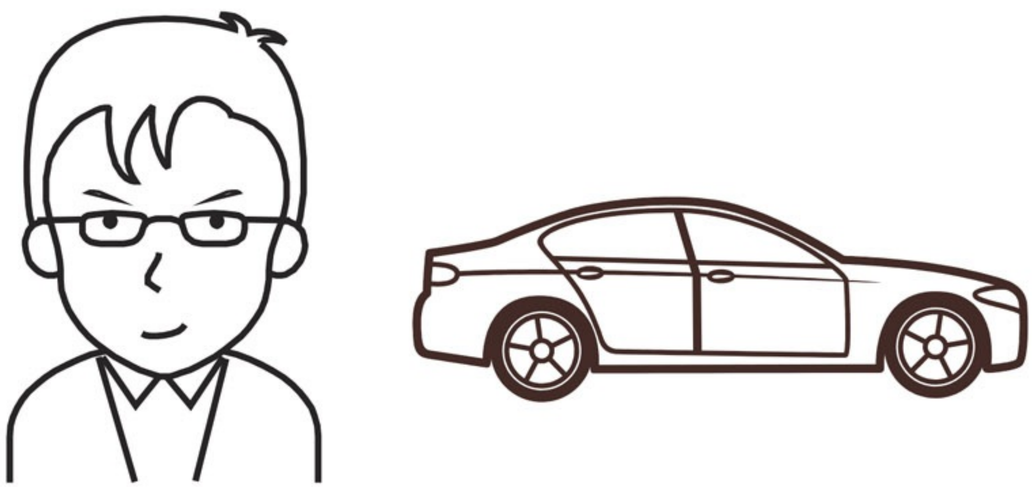
② か nojo no お to うさ n wa ご ju う ni さい de す。

③ お to うさ n no nama え wa Yo し hiro de す。

④ Jun こさ n to Jun こさ n no お to うさ n no く ruma wa Honda de す。

⑤ お to うさ n no く ruma wa mura さき de す。

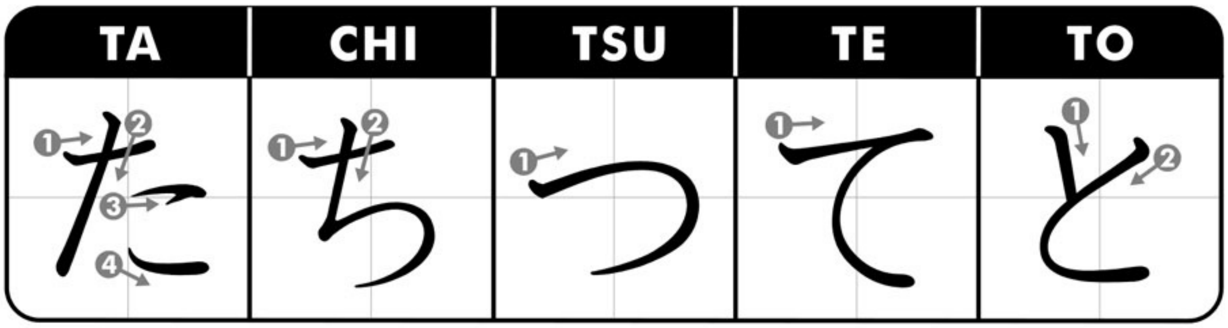
⑥ Jun こさ n no く ruma wa pinku to あお de す。

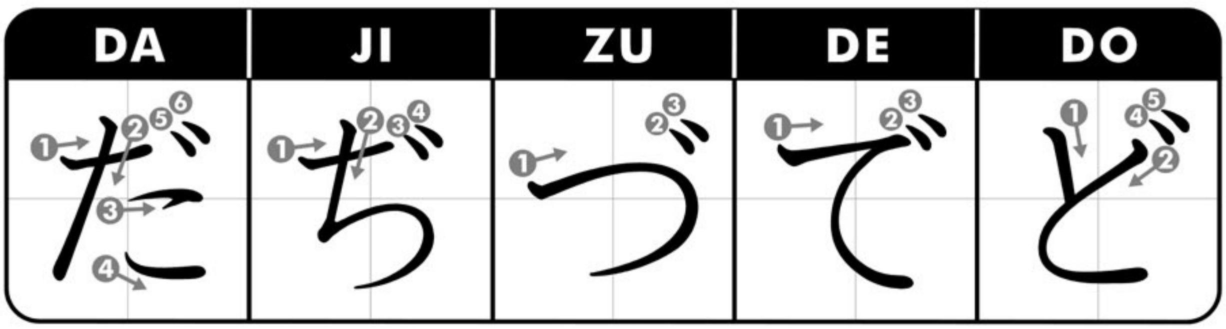


Hiragana たちつてと

た New Hiragana あたらしい ひらがな

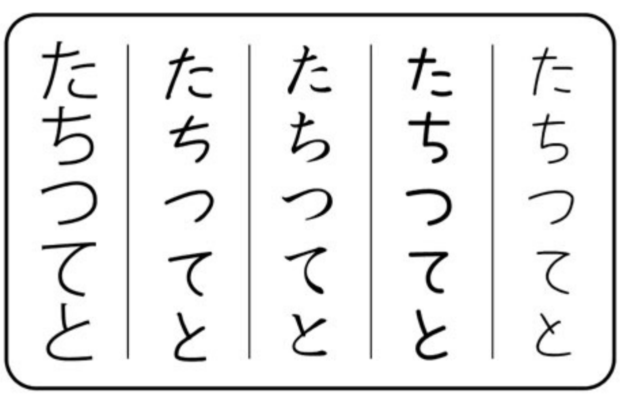
Make sure you learn the correct stroke order since correct stroke order will mean neater characters when writing quickly.

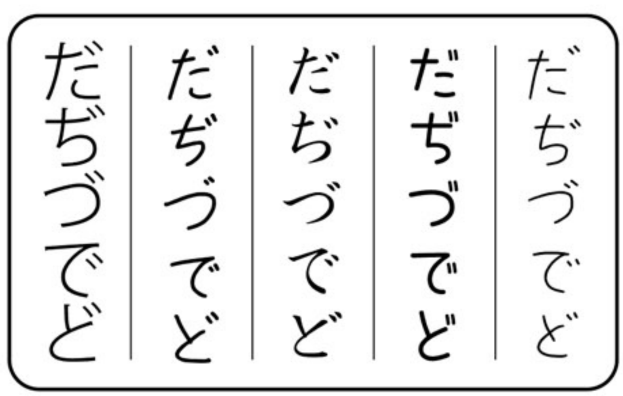




た Various Styles スタイル

Look at the various possible styles for the hiragana in this lesson. Write each symbol as neatly as you can, then compare it to the different versions below.





た Writing Points かくポイント

❑ The double consonants

The double consonants (*kk*, *pp*, *tt*, *cch*) are stressed with a slight pause before the consonant. To represent them in hiragana, a small つ is used.* The small つ is always placed in front of the hiragana that needs to be doubled.

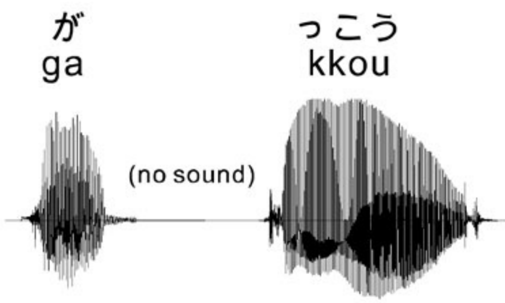
Examples

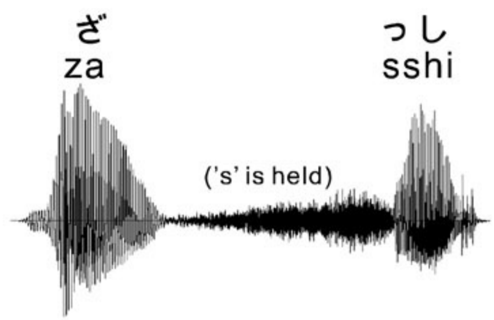
school	gakkou	がっこう
magazine	zasshi	ざっし
postage stamp	kitte	きって

* Make sure to write the つ smaller than normal to avoid confusion with a normal つ.

❑ The double consonant sound analysis

If you look at the sound wave for a word that has a double consonant, you will see a pause or visible space before the consonant. Look at the two samples below:





❑ Which version of *zu* and *ji* should be used?

There are two versions of *zu* and *ji*. The first set is in Lesson 3 and the second set is taught in this lesson. ず and じ from Lesson 3 are the most commonly used versions. づ and ぢ are used in only a few words, such as **は na ぢ** (nosebleed) and **つづく** (to continue). As you learn more vocabulary, pay attention to the hiragana that's used when you see these sounds. If you're not sure about what version to use, try ず and じ and 90% of the time you will be correct.

た Writing Practice れんしゅう

To practice correct stroke order, first trace the light gray characters, then write each character six times for practice.

ta	た	た						
chi	ち	ち						
tsu	つ	つ						
te	て	て						
to	と	と						

da	だ	だ						
ji	ぢ	ぢ						
zu	づ	づ						
de	で	で						
do	ど	ど						

た Word Practice ことばの れんしゅう

Fill in the appropriate hiragana in the blanks for each word.

1. wa___し (me, I) — ta
2. ___ ___ (free, no charge) — ta da
3. ___ ___ (to stand) — ta tsu
4. ___ ___ぜ n (all of a sudden) — to tsu
5. ___ ___mu (to shrink) — chi ji
6. ___ ___ ___う (to help) — te tsu da
7. い___い (it hurts, ouch) — ta
8. お ___うさ n (father) — to
9. hana___ (nose bleed) — ji
10. いき___mari (dead end) — do
11. ___nwa (telephone) — de
12. ___ ___く (to reach, arrive) — to do

た Words You Can Write かける ことば

Write the following words using the hiragana that you just learned. This is a great way to increase your Japanese vocabulary.

ただ (free)								
つぎ (next)								
ちず (map)								
かど (corner)								

ちち
(my father)

たつ
(to stand)

ざっし
(magazine)

きって
(postage stamp)

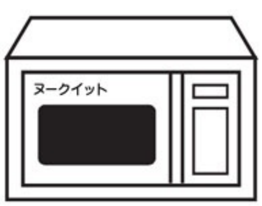
あつい
(hot)

たいいく
(phys. ed.)

つづき
(continuation)

とおい
(far)

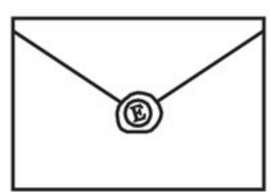
た Everyday Hiragana Words にちじょうの ことば



で n し renji
microwave oven



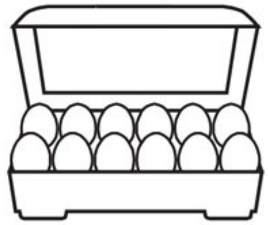
hon だ na
bookshelf



fu うとう
envelope



て
hand



た ma ご
eggs



くつした
socks

た Hiragana Matching ひらがな マッチング

Connect the dots between each hiragana and the correct ro–maji.

て・	・tsu
つ・	・da
さ・	・chi
ち・	・te
す・	・u
ぢ・	・ji
う・	・sa
だ・	・su

4 Lesson Activities

❑ Question and answer 1

Answer the following questions by looking at the pictures.

1. こ re wa nihon ごで nan ですか?



Answer: ______________________

2. こ re wa nihon ごで nan ですか?



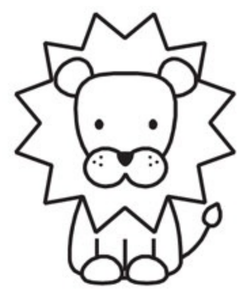
Answer: ______________________

3. こ re wa えいごで nan ですか?



Answer: ______________________

4. こ re wa えいごで nan ですか?



Answer: ______________________

❑ Question and answer 2

Answer the following questions as if they were being asked to you directly. Use the hiragana that you know.

1. あ na た no く ruma wa nani い ro ですか。

____

2. あ na た no haburashi wa nani い ro ですか。

____

3. Panda wa nani い ro ですか。

    ____

4. Banana wa nani い ro ですか。

    ____

5. ぞう wa gure– ですか。

    ____

❑ What would you say?

What would you say in the following situations?

1. after you stepped on someone’s foot by mistake

    ____

2. when you want to know what color someone’s dog is

    ____

3. when someone asks you if you are Mr. Tanaka

    ____

4. when you want to know how to say something in Japanese

    ____

❑ Japanese translation

Translate the following conversations into English. Then, in the space after the number write where you think the conversation is taking place and if it is polite, informal or mixed.

1.
たかださ n: く ruma wa nani い ro ですか。 **かどたさ n:** Wa たし no く ruma ですか。 **たかださ n:** Ha い。 **かどたさ n:** Mura さきです。あ na た no く ruma wa…？ **たかださ n:** Wa たし no く ruma wa ぎ n い ro と き n い ro です。
たかださ n:
かどたさ n:
たかださ n:
かどたさ n:
たかださ n:

❑ Reading comprehension questions

Answer the following questions about the reading comprehension in this lesson.

1. Jun こさ n no く ruma wa nani い ro ですか。

   ____

2. だ re no く ruma が Honda ですか。

   ____

3. だ re no く ruma が mura さき ですか。

   ____

4. Jun こさ n wa nan さい ですか。

   ____

5. だ re が ご ju う ni さい ですか。

   ____

❑ Short dialogue

Mr. Tanaka and Mr. Kobayashi are talking about their cars.

こ baya し さ n: た na か さ n の く ruma wa nan ですか。

た na か さ n: Wa たしの ①<u>く ruma</u> wa ②<u>Nissan</u> です。
あ na た no wa?

こ baya し さ n: Wa たしの ①<u>く ruma</u> wa ③<u>Mitsubishi</u> です。
い ro wa ④<u>あか</u>です。

た na か さ n: そうですか。
Wa たしの ①<u>く ruma</u> wa ⑤<u>し ro</u> です。

❑ Short dialogue activity

Practice reading the above dialogue in pairs.
Substitute ①~⑤ using the words below and try the conversation again.

1. ① Dog
   ② (your choice)
   ③ (your choice)
   ④ Brown
   ⑤ Black and white



2. ① Cat
   ② (your choice)
   ③ (your choice)
   ④ Gray
   ⑤ Brown and white



3. ① Cell Phone (けいたいで nwa)
   ② (your choice)
   ③ (your choice)
   ④ Red
   ⑤ Blue



❑ More words you can write

You should practice writing these words a minimum of five times each. Not only will you be practicing the new hiragana, but you will also learn new words.

えきたい	liquid, fluid	ちえ	wisdom
ちいき	region	ていあつ	low pressure
こうあつ	high pressure	げっこう	moonlight

4 Drill ドリル

Translate the following sentences. If you don't know what they mean, we recommend that you review the lesson up to this point before continuing.

1. す mima せ n.
2. Nihon ごで nan ですか。
3. Nani い ro ですか。
4. Wa たし no く ruma wa あかと く ro です。
5. た na かさ n no く ruma wa あおい Toyota です。

4 Sentence Building ぶんのつくり

In each lesson we will build on a previous sentence. Watch it grow and transform each time new concepts are introduced.

あ na た no おかあさ n no く ruma wa し ro い ですか。
Is your mother's car white?

Compare how the sentence has changed from the prior lessons:

Lesson 1: Nan ですか。
What is it?

Lesson 2: こ re wa nan ですか。
What is this?

Lesson 3: こ re wa あ na た no おかあさ n no く ruma ですか。
Is this your mother's car?

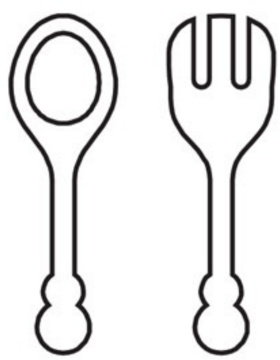
Vocabulary Groups

F things around the house

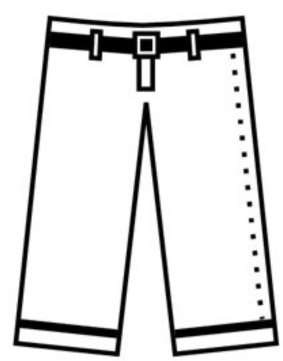
Progressive	Kana	Kanji	English
koppu	コップ	コップ	cup; glass
supu–n	スプーン	スプーン	spoon
fo–ku	フォーク	フォーク	fork
(お) さ ra	(お) さら	(お) 皿	plate
(お) chawan	(お) ちゃわん	(お) 茶わん	bowl
(お) ha し	(お) はし	(お) 箸	chopsticks
re いぞうこ	れいぞうこ	冷蔵庫	refrigerator
とけい	とけい	時計	clock
terebi	テレビ	テレビ	television
zubon	ズボン	ズボン	pants
くつ	くつ	靴	shoe
し nbun	しんぶん	新聞	newspaper



コップ



スプーンと
フォーク



ズボン

Lesson
5
Level ①

Likes and Dislikes
Making nouns negative



5 About This Lesson このレッスンについて

Before The Lesson

1. Be able to write and read たちつてと, だぢづでど.
2. Understand how to use the question word **nani い ro** and the particle **と**.
3. Review vocabulary group F.

Lesson Goals

1. Learn how to say you like or dislike something.
2. Learn how to use jana い.

From The Teachers

1. Know すき, き ra い and jana い like the back of your hand since they are used so much in daily conversation.

5 New Words あたらしい ことば

Progressive	Kana	Kanji	English
すき	すき	好き	like
き ra い	きらい	嫌い	dislike, hate
だいすき	だいすき	大好き	really like, like a lot
だいき ra い	だいきらい	大嫌い	really dislike, really hate
さとこ	さとこ	聡子	a girl's first name
Yo しお	よしお	良夫	a boy's first name
かい mono	かいもの	買い物	shopping
か n こう	かんこう	観光	sightseeing
ryo こう	りょこう	旅行	travel
shu くだい	しゅくだい	宿題	homework

しごと	しごと	仕事	work
さか na	さかな	魚	fish
chikin	チキン	チキン	chicken
nihon ご	にほんご	日本語	Japanese language
ja あ	じゃあ	じゃあ	well then…

5 New Adjectives あたらしい けいようし

Progressive	Kana	Kanji	English
おいしい	おいしい	美味しい	tastes good, delicious
おいしく na い	おいしくない	美味しくない	doesn't taste good

5 Grammar ぶんぽう

❑ The particle が with すき and き ra い

To say you like or dislike something with すき(like) and き ra い (dislike), the subject particle が is used after the thing that is liked or disliked.

[noun] が すき / きらいです。
like / dislike a [noun]

Examples

1. Wa たし wa いちごが すきです。	I like strawberries.
2. Wa たし wa うさぎが すきです。	I like rabbits.
3. Wa たし wa すいかがき ra いです。	I dislike watermelons.
4. Wa たし wa い nu がき ra いです。	I dislike dogs.
5. Wa たし wa chikin が だいすきです。	I really like chicken.
6. Wa たし wa さか na が だいすきです。	I really like fish.
7. Wa たし wa retasu が だいき ra いです。	I hate lettuce.
8. Wa たし wa かい mono が だいき ra いです。	I hate shopping.

❑ Using jana い to make things negative

Jana い means "not" or "don't" depending on the context of the sentence. **Jana い** is the informal version of **ja あ rima せ n** 、**de wa あ rima せ n**、or **で wa na い** however the informal version is most commonly used in everyday conversation. **Jana い** on its own is informal, but can be made polite by adding **です.** It must always follow the word it is modifying.

[word] jana いです。
It's not a [word].

Examples

1. あか jana い です。	It's not red.
2. Wa たし jana い です。	It's not me.
3. た na かさ n jana い です。	It is not Mr. Tanaka.
4. そ re jana い です。	It's not that one.
5. すき jana い です。	I don't like it.
6. き ra い jana い です。	I don't dislike it.

❑ The "one" pronoun

When the particle **no** comes after the noun version of a color or after an adjective, it transforms the word into what is called the "one" pronoun.

Examples

1. あか no	(a / the) red one
2. cha い ro no	(a / the) brown one
3. おいしい no	(a / the) good tasting one
4. nihon no	(a / the) Japanese one
5. mura さきと きい ro no	(a / the) purple and yellow one

Example Q&A

1. ど re が すきですか。	**Which one do you like?**
あか no が すきです。	I like the red one.
おいしい no が すきです。	I like the delicious one.
2. あ na た no ne こ wa ど re ですか。	**Which one is your cat?**
Cha い ro no です。	It's the brown one.
く ro と orenji no です。	It's the black and orange one.

❑ Using *ja あ* to say "Well then…"

Ja あ is a very well used word in Japanese. It's said at the beginning of a sentence, normally when asking a follow-up question.

Example Conversation

1. A: Ne こが すきですか。	Do you like cats?
B: いいえ、だいき ra い です。	No I hate them!
A: Ja あ、い nu が すき ですか。	Well then, do you like dogs?
B: はい、だいすき です。	Yes, I love (like a lot) them!
2. A: あ re が あ na た no く ruma ですか。	Is that your car?
B: いいえ、ちがい ma す。	No, it's not.
A: Ja あ、ど re ですか。	Well then, which one is it?
B: あ re です。	It's that one.
3. A: あかが すきですか。	Do you like red?
B: いいえ、あかが き ra い です。	No I dislike red.
A: Ja あ、nani い ro が すきですか。	Well then, what color do you like?
B: Mi ど ri と mura さきが すきです。	I like green and purple.

5 Speaking Naturally しぜんに はなすこと

❑ Using き ra い versus すき jana い

When speaking in Japanese, you should be careful when using **き ra い** and **だいき ra い**. In Japanese culture these words sound a bit harsh. If you don't like something, then you should use **すき jana い** instead of **き ra い** in everyday conversations.

5 Q&A しつもんと こたえ E→J

1. Do you like it?	**すきですか。**
Yes, I like it.	Ha い、すきです。
No, I don't like it.	いいえ、すき jana いです。
Yes, I really like it.	Ha い、だいすきです。

2. **Do you dislike it?** — **き ra い ですか。**
Yes, I dislike it. — Ha い、き ra い です。
No, I don't dislike it. — いいえ、き ra い jana い です。
No, I like it. — いいえ、すきです。

3. **What do you like?** — **Nani が すき ですか。**
I like shopping. — かい mono が すきです。
I like travel. — Ryo こうが すきです。
I like Japanese (language). — Nihon ごが すきです。

4. **What do you dislike?** — **Nani が き ra いですか。**
I dislike homework. — Shu くだいが き ra いです。
I dislike work. — しごとが き ra いです。
I dislike fish. — さか na が き ra いです。

5. **Which one do you like? (two items)** — **どっちが すきですか。**
I like the red one. — あかのが すきです。
I like the green one. — Mi ど ri no が すきです。
I like this one. — こっちが すきです。

5 Q&A しつもんと こたえ J→E

1. **さか na が すき ですか。** — **Do you like fish?**
Ha い、さか na が すきです。 — Yes, I like fish.
いいえ、さか na が き ra いです。 — No, I dislike fish.
Ha い、さか na が だいすきです。 — Yes, I really like fish.
いいえ、すき jana いです。 — No, I don't like it.
いいえ、おいしく na い です。 — No, it doesn't taste good.

2. **Wa たし no く ruma が すきですか。** — **Do you like my car?**
Ha い だいすき です。 — Yes, I like it a lot.
いいえ、だいき ra い です。 — No, I hate it.

3. **Banana が き ra い ですか。** — **Do you dislike bananas?**
Ha い、き ra い です。 — Yes, I dislike them.
いいえ、banana が すきです。 — No, I like bananas.
Banana が き ra い jana い です。 — I don't dislike bananas.

4. **Mi ずが すきですか。** — **Do you like water?**
   Ha い そうです。 — Yes, I do.
   いいえ、すき jana いです。 — No, I don't like it.

5. **Nani が き ra いですか。** — **What do you dislike?**
   Cha い ro い banana が だいき ra いです。 — I really hate brown bananas.
   かい mono が き ra いです。 — I hate shopping.

5 Reading Comprehension どっかい

Read the sentences below. Use the information to answer the reading comprehension questions later in this lesson.

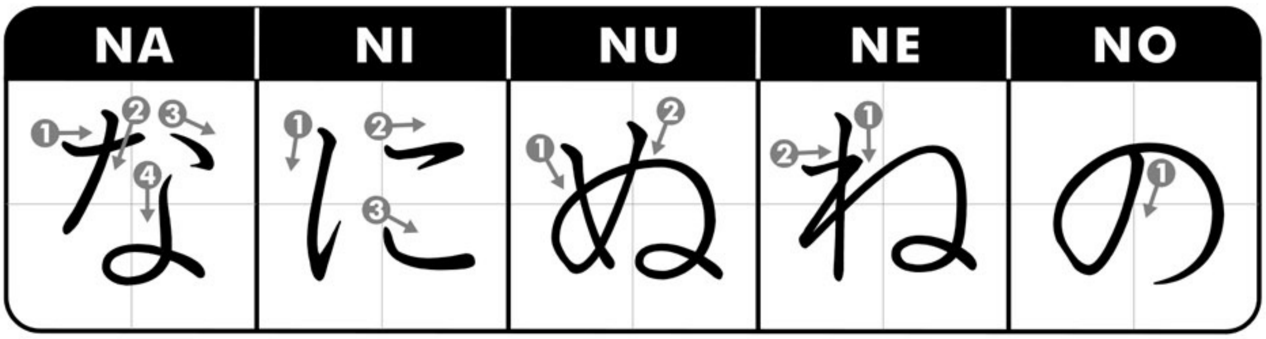
① さとこさ n no か re no nama え wa た na か yo しお です。
② さとこさ n wa 25 さい です。
③ Yo しおさ n wa 27 さい です。
④ さとこさ n wa かい mono が だいすきです。
⑤ Yo しおさ n wa かい mono が すき jana い です。
⑥ Yo しおさ n wa しごとが すきです。
⑦ さとこさ n wa しごとが き ra いです。
⑧ さとこさ n と yo しおさ n wa ryo こうが だいすきです。



Hiragana なにぬねの

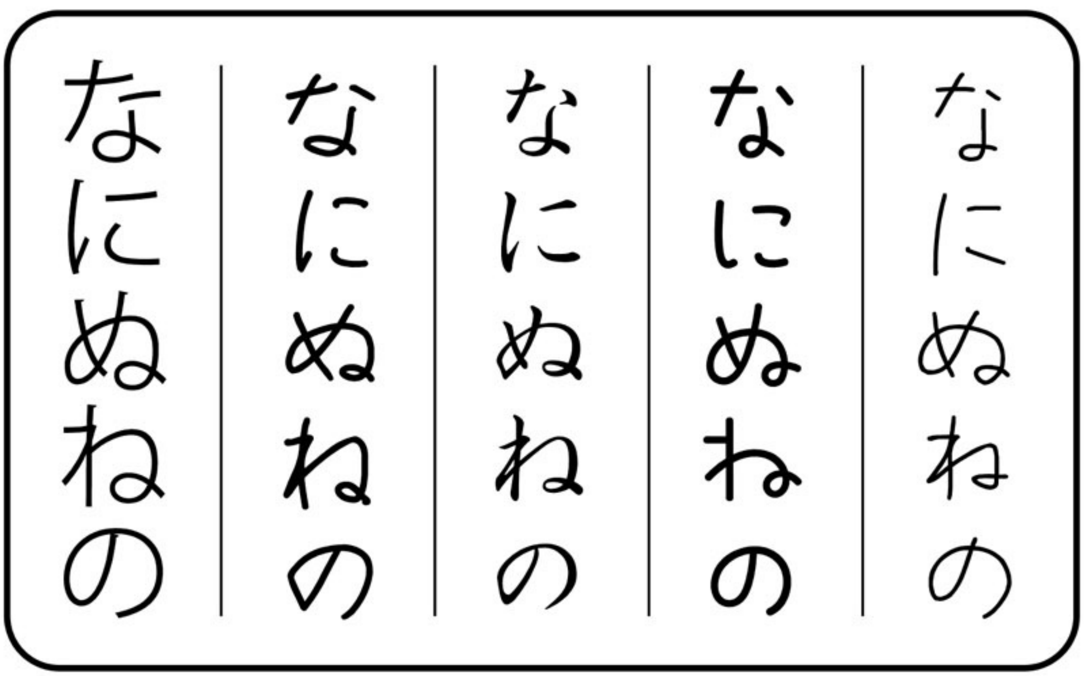
な New Hiragana あたらしい ひらがな

Make sure you learn the correct stroke order since correct stroke order will mean neater characters when writing fast.



な Various Styles スタイル

Look at the various possible styles for the hiragana in this lesson. Write each symbol as neatly as you can, then compare it to the different versions below.



な Writing Practice れんしゅう

To practice correct stroke order, first trace the light gray characters, then write each character six times for practice.

na	な	な						
ni	に	に						
nu	ぬ	ぬ						
ne	ね	ね						
no	の	の						

な Word Practice ことばの れんしゅう

Fill in the appropriate hiragana in the blanks for each word.

1. ___つ (summer)
   na
2. ___hon (Japan)
   ni
3. ___こ (cat)
   ne
4. yo___か (middle of the night)
   na
5. ___mu (to drink)
   no
6. ___ru (to sleep, to go to bed)
   ne
7. ___ ___ (what?)
   na ni
8. ___いぐ rumi (stuffed animal)
   nu

9. ___がい (bitter tasting)
   ni

10. お___えさ n (older sister)
    ne

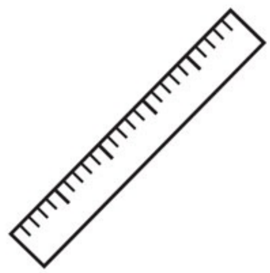
11. ___ぐ (to take off clothes)
    nu

12. ___ru (to ride)
    no

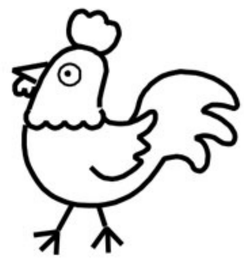
な Everyday Hiragana Words にちじょうの ことば



いぬ
dog



ながい
long



に wa と ri
chicken



の ru
to ride



ぬ ru
to paint



ねこ
cat

な Words You Can Write かける ことば

Write the following words using the hiragana that you just learned. This is a great way to increase your Japanese vocabulary.

なに
(what)

ねこ
(cat)

なな
(seven)

にし
(west)

なつ
(summer)

あなた
(you)

ねつ
(fever)

いぬ
(dog)

のど
(throat)

かに
(crab)

にっき
(diary)

にく
(meat)

にじ
(rainbow)

な Hiragana Matching ひらがな マッチング

Connect the dots between each hiragana and the correct ro–maji.

な・	・no
の・	・ni
か・	・ta
す・	・na
ぬ・	・ka
ね・	・nu
に・	・ne
た・	・su

5 Lesson Activities

❑ Question and answer 1

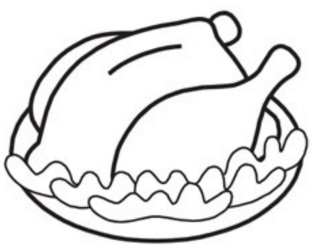
Answer the following questions by looking at the pictures. Use ~ja ない です when answering the following questions:

1a. こ re wa さかな ですか?

____

1b. Ja あ ("Well then")、 な n ですか?

____



2a. こ re wa hon ですか?

____

2b. Ja あ、 な n ですか?

____



3a. こ re wa (お) chawan と supu–n ですか?

____

3b. Ja あ、な n ですか?

____

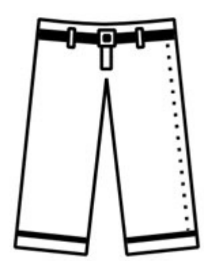


4a. こ re wa くつ ですか?

____

4b. Ja あ、な n ですか?

____



❑ Question and answer 2

Pick one of the pictures and say, [item] が すきです or [item] が き ra いです.

ど re が すきですか / き ra いですか?



きい ro い とけい



く ro い とけい



mi ど ri の とけい

ど re が すきですか / き ra いですか?



しごと



shu くだい



かい mo の

❑ Question and answer 3

Answer the following questions as though they were being asked to you directly. Use the hiragana that you know when writing your answer.

1. Ryo こう が すきですか。

____

2. ねこが き ra いですか。

____

3. ya さいが すきですか。

____

4. に hon ご が すきですか。

____

5. (お)すし wa おいしいですか。

____

❑ Japanese translation

Translate the following example into English.

1. Yo しおさ n wa く ruma が だいすきです。 2. Yo しおさ n の く ruma wa あかと し ro です。 3. か re の し ro い く ruma wa hon だ です。 4. あかの wa Toyota です。 5. Yo しおさ n の おとうさ n wa く ruma が だいすきです。 6. おとうさ n の く ruma wa き n い ro の く ruma と きい ro い く ruma です。 7. おかあさ n wa きい ro い く ruma が すき ja ないです。
1.
2.
3.
4.
5.
6.
7.

❑ Reading comprehension questions

Answer the following questions about the reading comprehension in this lesson.

1. さとこさ n の か re wa、だ re ですか。

    ____

2. Yo しおさ n wa しごとが き ra いですか。

    ____

3. さとこさ n wa な n さいですか。

    ____

4. だ re が かい mo の が すきですか。

    ____

5. だ re が、ryo こうが すきですか。

    ____

❑ Short dialogue

Ms. Mori and Ms. Nishida are talking about movies.



Mori さ n:	にしださ n wa えいがが すきですか。
にしだ さ n:	Ha い、だいすきです。
Mori さ n:	Wa たし mo です。 Ha い yu う wa だ re が すきですか。
にしだ さ n:	Harison Fo–do が すきです。
Mori さ n:	そうですか。 Wa たし wa Buraddo Pitto が すきです。
にしだ さ n:	Wa たし mo Buraddo Pitto mo すきです。

New words and expressions in the dialogue

Progressive	Kana	Kanji	English
えいが	えいが	映画	movie
はい yu う	はいゆう	俳優	actor
Harison Fo–do	ハリソン・フォード	ハリソン・フォード	Harrison Ford (actor)
Buraddo Pitto	ブラッド・ピット	ブラッド・ピット	Brad Pitt (actor)

❑ Short dialogue activities

1. Practice reading the dialogue in pairs.
2. Talk about your most/least favorite movie(s).
3. Talk about your most/least favorite actor(s).

More words you can write

You should practice writing these words a minimum of five times each. Not only will you be practicing the new hiragana, but you will also learn new words.

ぬぐ	to undress	かね	steel
にっき	diary	にく	meat
ねじ	a screw	ねぎ	green onion
ねあげ	a rise in price	なつかしい	dear, longed for

5 Drill ドリル

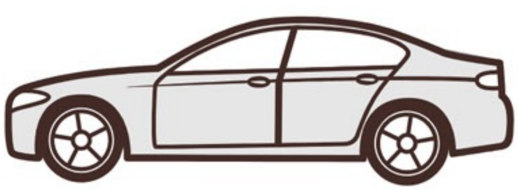
Translate the following sentences. If you're not sure what they mean, we recommend that you review the lesson up to this point before continuing.

1. なにが すきですか。
2. しごとが だいすきです。
3. さかな to ya さいが すき ja ない です。
4. Wa たしの く ruma wa mura さき ja ない です。
5. あなたの と mo だちの く ruma wa あお ja ない ですか。

5 Sentence Building ぶんのつくり

In each lesson we will build on a previous sentence. Watch it grow and transform each time new concepts are introduced.

あなたの おかあさ n wa なにい ro のく ruma が すきですか。
What color car does your mother like?



あか



しro

Compare how the sentence has changed from the prior lessons:

Lesson 2: こ re wa な n ですか。
What is this?

Lesson 3: こ re wa あなたの おかあさ n の く ruma ですか。
Is this your mother's car?

Lesson 4: あなたの おかあさ n の く ruma wa し ro い ですか。
Is your mother's car white?

Vocabulary Groups

G sports and entertainment

Progressive	Kana	Kanji	English
basuketto booru	バスケットボール	バスケットボール	basketball
gyanburu	ギャンブル	ギャンブル	gambling
sakka–	サッカー	サッカー	soccer

H fruit

Progressive	Kana	Kanji	English
いちご	いちご	苺	strawberry
mi か n / orenji	みかん / オレンジ	みかん / オレンジ	orange
rin ご	りんご	りんご	apple
banana	バナナ	バナナ	banana
すいか	すいか	西瓜	watermelon
remon	レモン	レモン	lemon
momo	もも	桃	peach
bu どう	ぶどう	ぶどう	grapes

Lesson **6** Level ①

Wanting and Not Wanting

Conjugating adjectives



6 About This Lesson このレッスンについて

Before The Lesson

1. Be able to write and read なにぬねの.
2. Understand how to use すき, き ra い and ja ない.
3. Review vocabulary group G and H.

Lesson Goals

1. Learn how to say you want or don't want something.
2. Learn how to conjugate adjectives into the negative form.

From The Teachers

1. Don't confuse the usage of ja ない, and くない. Remember that ja ない is used with nouns and くない is used with い adjectives.

6 New Words あたらしい ことば

Progressive	Kana	Kanji	English
ho しい	ほしい	欲しい	want
doru	ドル	ドル	dollars
え n	えん	円	yen
inta–netto	インターネット	インターネット	internet
おかね	おかね	お金	money
mo ち ron	もちろん	もちろん	of course
ko–ra	コーラ	コーラ	cola
mi ず	みず	水	water
の mimo の	のみもの	飲み物	a drink, drinks

6 Culture Clip カルチャー クリップ

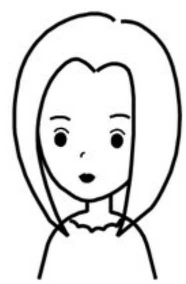
You might see く n or *chan* added to the end of last or first names. They are both used to show affection, but are not limited to just that. *Chan* is mostly used after girls' names and く n after boys' names. *Chan* is used quite often after children's names, regardless of the sex of the child. It is also not unusual for a higher-up in a company to refer to the female staff members with a く n following their names.

When NOT to use

Chan and く n should *never* be used when addressing people above you in social status. If you ever hear someone addressing another person with く n or *chan*, you can assume that the speaker is equal or higher in status.



kun



chan

6 New Phrases あたらしい かいわ

1. けっこうです。　　I'm fine. (No thanks)

6 New Adjectives あたらしい けいようし

The following adjectives are all い adjectives. い adjectives always end in い. The particle の is not necessary to make the word an adjective. Since they are already adjectives, they can simply be placed in front of a word to modify it. They can be considered *true adjectives* because they stand alone as adjectives without any help.

Progressive	Kana	Kanji	English
あた ra しい	あたらしい	新しい	new
furu い	ふるい	古い	old
あつい	あつい	暑い	hot
さ mu い	さむい	寒い	cold

つ me たい	つめたい	冷たい	cold to the touch
ぬ ru い	ぬるい	温い	warm, luke warm

6 Grammar ぶんぽう

❑ Making adjectives negative

In the prior lesson you learned how to make nouns negative by adding ja ない to them. For example, いぬ ja ないです, means "it is not a dog." To make い adjectives negative, ~ja ない can not be used.

All true adjectives end with an い. To make い adjectives negative, drop the last い then add くない.

(い adjective) minus い, add くない
It's not (adjective).

Examples

1. あた ra しい = new
   あた ra しくない = not new
2. おいしい = delicious
   おいしくない = not delicious
3. さ mu い = cold
   さ mu くない = not cold
4. あつい = hot
   あつくない = not hot
5. つ me たい = cold to the touch
   つ me たくない = not cold to the touch
6. furu い = old
   furu くない = not old

❑ The colors as negative adjectives

The same thing can be done with the adjective forms of colors.

Examples

1. あかい = red
   あかくない = not red
2. あおい = blue
   あおくない = not blue
3. cha い ro い = brown
   cha い ro くない = not brown
4. きい ro い = yellow
   きい ro くない = not yellow

❑ Wanting and not wanting

The particle が is used with ho しい (want) in the same way it is used with すき and き ra い. が is used to mark the thing that you want or don't want.

[*thing*] が ho しい です。
I want [*thing*]

To change "want" into "don't want," drop the い then add くない.

[*thing*] が ho しくない です。
I don't want [*thing*]

Example Sentences

1. あた ra しい terebi が ho しい です。
   I want a new television.

2. つ me たい の mimo のが ho しい です。
   I want a cold drink.

3. Furu い く ruma が ho しくない です。
   I don't want an old car.

❑ Tricky uses of the particle の

The particle の that we learned in other lessons is used to show possession (as in the sentence **wa たしの く ruma です** – "it is my car"). More importantly, we learned that の can be used to make any noun into an adjective just by coming after the noun, as in **に hon ご の hon** (a Japanese language book).

The usage described above is simple, but sometimes when you have a string of words separated by の it can be tricky. Look at the following sentence:

1. Wa たしの と mo だちの あきこさ n wa に ju うごさい です。
   My friend Akiko is 25 years old.

This sentence may look confusing, but remember that the key function of の is to make the noun or word it comes after into a modifier (no-adjective). Wa たしの と mo だちの あきこさ n simply means, "my friend Akiko." Wa たしの と mo だちの is just modifying あきこさ n.

❑ Numbers and money

If you want to say 100 dollars or 100 yen, you just add *doru* or *え n* after the number. The particle の is not required.

Examples

1. 100 yen.
   Hya くえ n.
2. 1000 dollars.
   せ n doru.

6 Q&A しつもんと こたえ J→E

1. **なにが ho しい ですか。** — **What do you want?**
   あた ra しい く ruma が ho しい です。 — I want a new car.
   いち man doru が ho しい です。 — I want 10,000 dollars.
   かの jo が ho しい です。 — I want a girlfriend.
   つ me たい ko–ra が ho しい です。 — I want a cold cola.

2. **ど re が ho しい ですか。** — **Which one do you want?**
   こ re とこ re が ho しい です。 — I want this one and this one.
   あかのが ho しい です。 — I want the red one.
   Mi ど ri と あおのが ho しい です。 — I want the green and blue one.

3. **あなたのく ruma wa あた ra しい ですか。** — **Is your car new?**
   いいえ、furu い です。 — No, it's old.
   いいえ、あた ra しくない です。 — No, it's not new.

4. **Konpyu–ta–が ho しい ですか。** — **Do you want a computer?**
   いいえ、ho しくない です。 — No, I don't want one.
   Ha い、ho しい です。 — Yes, I want one.

6 Q&A しつもんと こたえ E→J

1. **What color car do you want?** — **なにい ro の く ruma が ho しい ですか。**
   I want a silver car. — ぎ n い ro の く ruma が ho しい です。
   I don't want a car. — く ruma が ho しくない です。

2. **Don't you want a new refrigerator?** — **あた ra しい re いぞうこが ho しくない ですか。**
   Of course I want one. — Mo ち ron ho しい です。

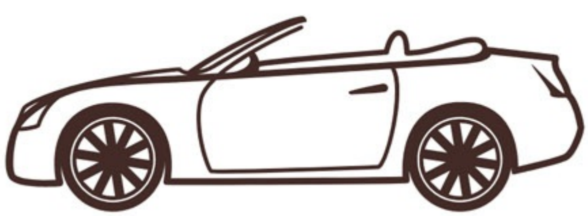
3. **Is your drink cold?** **あなたの の mimo の wa つ me たい ですか。**
No, it's not cold. いいえ、つ me たくない です。
No, it's warm. いいえ、ぬ ru い です。

4. **Do you want a newspaper?** **し nbun が ho しいですか。**
Yes, I want the Asahi Newspaper. Ha い、あさ hi し nbun が ho しいです。

6 Reading Comprehension どっかい

Read the sentences below. Use the information to answer the reading comprehension questions later in this lesson.

① Bo くの な ma え wa ma つ mo とです。
② Inta–netto が すきです。
③ Konpyu–ta–が ho しいです。
④ Bo くの と mo だちの たし ro く n wa konpyu–ta–が ho しくないです。
⑤ たし ro く n wa あかい く ruma が ho しいです。
⑥ Bo く wa あかい く ruma wa すき ja ないです。
⑦ し ro い く ruma が すきです。

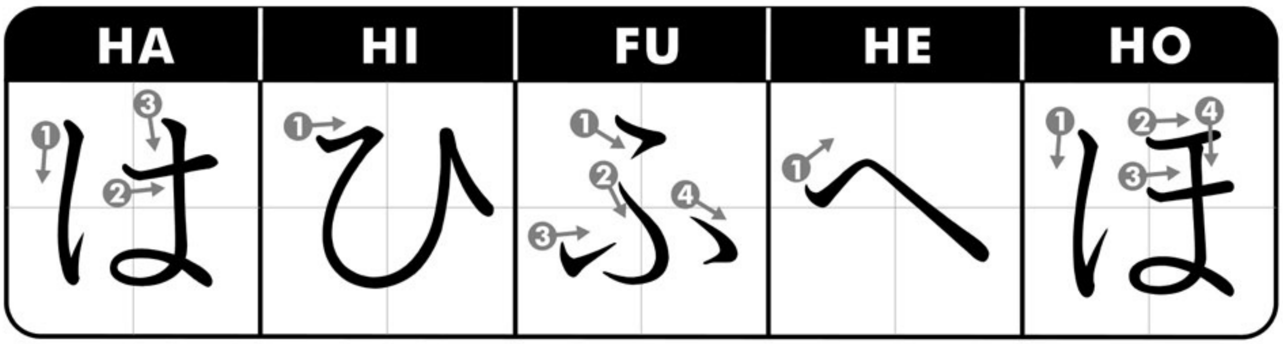


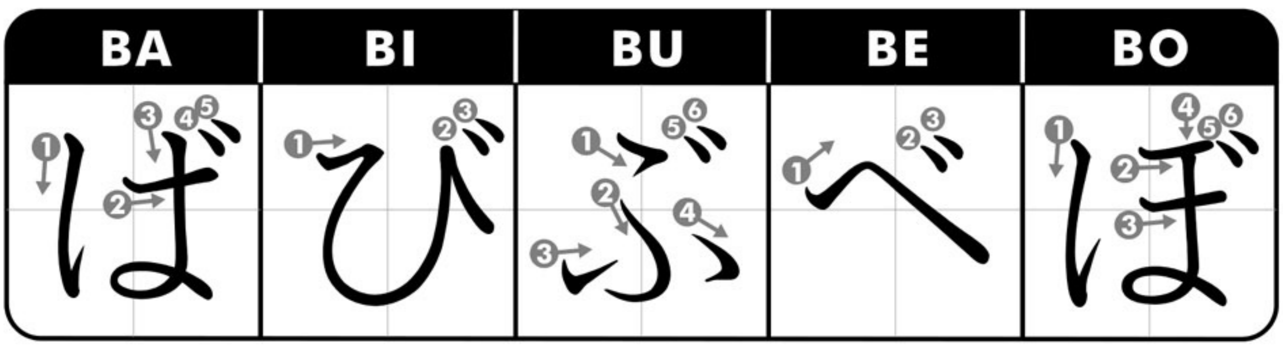


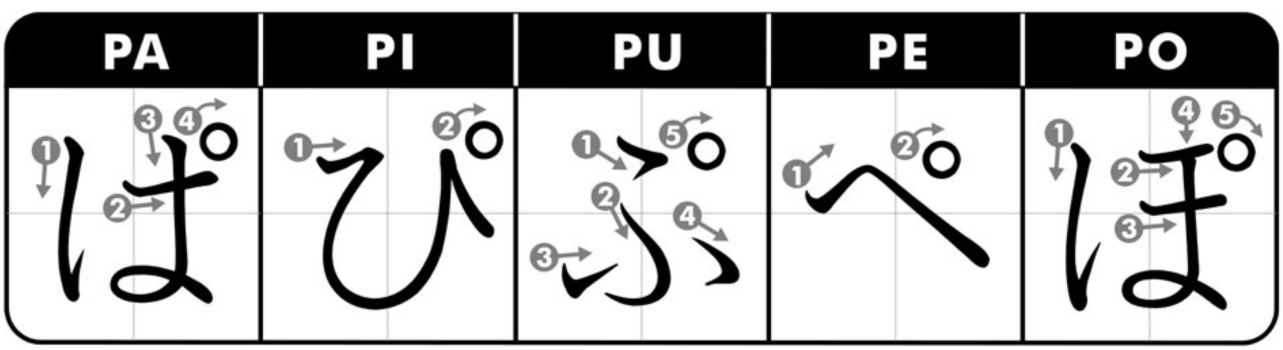
Hiragana はひふへほ

は New Hiragana あたらしい ひらがな

Make sure you learn the correct stroke order since correct stroke order will mean neater characters when writing quickly.







は Various Styles スタイル

Look at the various possible styles for the hiragana in this lesson. Write each symbol as neatly as you can, then compare it to the different versions below.

はひふへほ
はひふへほ
はひふへほ
はひふへほ
はひふへほ

ばびぶべぼ
ばびぶべぼ
ばびぶべぼ
ばびぶべぼ
ばびぶべぼ

ぱぴぷぺぽ
ぱぴぷぺぽ
ぱぴぷぺぽ
ぱぴぷぺぽ
ぱぴぷぺぽ

は Writing Points かくポイント

❑ What is that circle?

The *pa pi pu pe po* hiragana are made by adding a circle in the area where *dakuten* normally would go. The circle should be written clockwise and is always the last stroke. Most Japanese people refer to this as simply *maru*, which means “circle.” The official name for it is *handakuten*.

は→ぱ

HA PA

ひ→ぴ

HI PI

❑ Why isn’t ふ written as *HU*?

Japanese From Zero! represents ふ as *FU* instead of *HU* in ro–maji. Japanese people will sometimes represent ふ as *HU* in ro–maji, however, the pronunciation of ふ is closer to *FU*. The F sound in ふ should be voiced softer than the F sound in an English word.

❑ The easy way to write ふ (fu)

ふ tends to be difficult to write, but there is an easy way: connect the first and second stroke into what looks like a number “3.”

ふ ふふふ

The 3 Version Actual Font Versions

は Writing Practice れんしゅう

To practice correct stroke order, first trace the light gray characters, then write each character six times for practice.

ha	は	は						
hi	ひ	ひ						
fu	ふ	ふ						
he	へ	へ						
ho	ほ	ほ						

ba	ば	ば						
bi	び	び						
bu	ぶ	ぶ						
be	べ	べ						
bo	ぼ	ぼ						

pa	ぱ	ぱ						
pi	ぴ	ぴ						
pu	ぷ	ぷ						
pe	ぺ	ぺ						
po	ぽ	ぽ						

は Special Usage とくべつな つかいかた

The topic marker は (wa)

A topic marker in Japanese identifies the subject of a sentence. The topic marker "wa" is written using the は (ha) character and can never be written using the わ (wa) character. In all other situations, は (ha) is always read as "ha."

Example Sentences

1. あなたは (wa) だ re ですか。 — Who are you?
2. Banana は (wa) きい ro です。 — Bananas are yellow.

The direction marker へ (e)

The direction marker "e" is written using the へ (he) character and can never be written using the え (e) character. In all other situations, へ (he) is always read as "he."
NOTE: This grammar point is covered in Lesson 12.

Example Sentences

1. がっこうへ (e) いき ma す。 — I am going towards (to) school.
2. とう kyo うへ (e) いき ma す。 — I am going towards (to) Tokyo.

は Word Practice ことばの れんしゅう

Fill in the appropriate hiragana in the blanks for each word.

1. ___ru (spring) — ha
2. ___ru ご___n (lunch) — hi, ha
3. ___yu (winter) — fu
4. ___い wa (peace) — he
5. え___n (picture book) — ho
6. が n___ru (to do your best) — ba
7. ___な___ (fireworks) — ha, bi
8. か mi___く ro (paper bag) — bu
9. ___と me___re (love at first sight) — hi, bo
10. く ra___ru (to compare) — be
11. ___ ___な (electric spark) — hi, ba
12. え n___つ (pencil) — pi

は Words You Can Write かける ことば

Write the following words using the hiragana that you just learned. This is a great way to increase your Japanese vocabulary.

はし (chopsticks)								
へそ (belly button)								
はと (pigeon; dove)								

ぶた
(pig)

ひと
(people)

しっぽ
(tail)

とうふ
(tofu)

はっぱ
(leaf)

ほっぺ
(cheeks)

ぼうし
(hat)

きっぷ
(ticket)

はなび
(fireworks)

は Everyday Hiragana Words にちじょうの ことば



ひ sho
secretary



ふく ro う
owl



おばけ
monster



ほうたい
bandage



はし ru
to run



てっぽう
pistol, gun

は Hiragana Matching ひらがな マッチング

Connect the dots between each hiragana and the correct ro–maji.

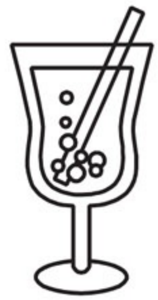
ふ・	・pi
ぺ・	・pe
ぜ・	・bo
ぼ・	・gi
は・	・fu
た・	・ze
ぴ・	・ta
ぎ・	・ha

6 Lesson Activities

❑ Question and answer 1

Pick one of the pictures and say ～が ほしいです / ほしくないです.

どreが ほしいですか / ほしくないですか。



ju-su

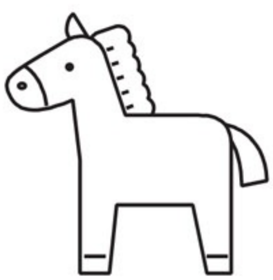


mi ず



ko–ra

どreが ほしいですか / ほしくないですか。



う ma



ねこ



いぬ

❑ Question and answer 2

Answer the following questions as if they were being asked to you directly. Use the hiragana that you have learned when writing your answers.

1. なにい ro の く ruma が すきですか。

____

2. にほ n の ざっしが ほしいですか。

____

3. つ me たい ko-ra が ほしいですか。

____

4. あなたの terebi は、あた ra しいですか。

____

❑ Question and answer 3

Using ________が ほしいです, make a conversation for the following pictures:

What are Ichiro and Yumiko saying in this picture?

Ichiro:_______________________________________

Yumiko: ______________________________________



What are the nurse and the patient saying in this picture?

Nurse: _______________________________________

Patient: ______________________________________



❑ English translation

Translate the following conversation into Japanese.

1.	
George さ n: **Yu か ri さ n:** **George さ n:** **Yu か ri さ n:**	What is your name? It is Yukari. What is yours? My name is George. I am 34 years old. How old are you? I am 26 years old.
George さ n:	
Yu か ri さ n:	
George さ n:	
Yu か ri さ n:	

❑ Reading comprehension questions

Answer the following questions about the reading comprehension in this lesson.

1. Ma つ mo とく n は、なにが すきですか。

   ____

2. Ma つ mo とく n の と mo だちの な ma えは、な n ですか。

   ____

3. たし ro く n は、なにが ほしいですか。

   ____

4. Ma つ mo とく n は、あかいく ruma が すきですか。

   ____

5. Ma つ mo とく n は、なにい ro の く ruma が すきですか。

   ____

❑ Short dialogue

Mr. Yoshida is welcoming Karen to his house.

Yo しだ さ n: Karen さ n、どうぞ。

Karen: はい、お jama し ma す。

Yo しだ さ n: の mimo のは なにが ほしいですか。

Karen: そうですね…。 Ko–ra が ほしいです。

Yo しだ さ n: Cho っと ma ってください。
はい、どうぞ。 (serving a bottle of cola)

Karen: あ ri がとうございます ma す。



New words and expressions in the dialogue

Progressive	Kanji	English
どうぞ。	どうぞ。	Please come in.
お jama し ma す。	お邪魔します。	I will come in.

(literally, "I will bother you," when entering someone's house)

そうですね…	そうですね…	Let's see…
Cho っと ma ってください。	ちょっと待って下さい。	Please wait a moment.
(はい) どうぞ。	(はい) どうぞ。	Here you are.

(when serving/giving something to someone)

❑ Short dialogue activities

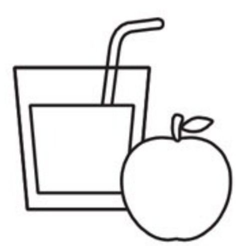
Practice reading the dialogue in pairs.
Suppose someone is visiting your house. Ask him/her what he/she wants to have for a drink.



orenji ju–su?



mi ず?



rin ご ju–su?

❑ More words you can write

You should practice writing these words a minimum of five times each. Not only will you be practicing the new hiragana, but you will also learn new words.

しばふ	grass	ふうふ	married couple
はこぶ	to move an item	へいたい	soldier
すなば	sand box	こうべ	Kobe (city)
ばくはつ	explosion	ぴかぴか	shiny
てっぽう	gun		

6 Drill ドリル

Translate the following sentences. If you don't know what they mean, then we recommend that you review the lesson up to this point before continuing.

1. なにが ほしい ですか。
2. つ me たい mi ずが ほしい です。
3. あかくない rin ご wa すき ja ない です。

6 Sentence Building ぶんのつくり

In each lesson we will build on a previous sentence. Watch it grow and transform each time new concepts are introduced.

あなたの おかあさ n は なにい ro の く ruma が ほしいですか。
What color car does your mother want?

Compare how the sentence has changed from the prior lessons:

Lesson 3: こ re は あなたの おかあさ n の く ruma ですか。
Is this your mother's car?

Lesson 4: あなたの おかあさ n の く ruma は し ro い ですか。
Is your mother's car white?

Lesson 5: あなたの おかあさ n は なにい ro の く ruma が すき ですか。
What color car does your mother like?

Vocabulary Groups

I transportation

Progressive	Kana	Kanji	English
く ruma	くるま	車	car
ひこうき	ひこうき	飛行機	airplane
で nsha	でんしゃ	電車	train
basu	バス	バス	bus
ふね	ふね	船	ship; boat
さ nrinsha	さんりんしゃ	三輪車	tricycle
sho うぼう sha	しょうぼうしゃ	消防車	fire truck
じて nsha	じてんしゃ	自転車	bicycle
し n か n せ n	しんかんせん	新幹線	bullet train
patoka–	パトカー	パトカー	patrol car



バス


じてんしゃ


ひこうき

Lesson
7
Level ①

Locations
Where is it?



7 About This Lesson このレッスンについて

Before The Lesson

1. Be able to write and read はひふへほ, ばびぶべぼ, ぱぴぷぺぽ.
2. Understand how make a noun into a modifying word using the particle の.
3. Review vocabulary group I.

Lesson Goals

1. Learn how to say where an item is.
2. Learn when to use は (wa) or が.

From The Teachers

1. The こそあど diagram in Lesson 2 for will be helpful in understanding the distance relationships for ここ, そこ, and あそこ words in the どこ word group in this lesson.

7 New Words あたらしい ことば

Progressive	Kana	Kanji	English
どこ	どこ	どこ	where? what place?
ここ	ここ	ここ	here, this place
そこ	そこ	そこ	there, that place
あそこ	あそこ	あそこ	over there, that place over there
そと	そと	外	outside
なか	なか	中	inside
resutoran	レストラン	レストラン	restaurant
にほ n	にほん	日本	Japan
amerika	アメリカ	アメリカ	America
で mo	でも	でも	but

7 New Adjectives あたらしい けいようし

Progressive	Kana	Kanji	English
いい、yo い	いい 、よい	いい、良い	nice, good
おおきい	おおきい	大きい	big
ちいさい	ちいさい	小さい	small

7 Word Usage ことばの つかいかた

❑ Yo くない vs いくない

In Lesson 6 you learned how to make any adjective negative by dropping the い and adding くない.

Examples

1. おおきい = big
   おおき<u>くない</u> = <u>not</u> big

2. ちいさい = small
   ちいさ<u>くない</u> = <u>not</u> small

いい is an exception to the normal pattern. Both いい and yo い mean "nice, good". And even though you will sometimes hear people say いくない to mean "not good" in a casual conversation, it is not commonly used and generally not considered standard Japanese. Instead, yo くない should be used to say "not good".

7 New Phrases あたらしい かいわ

1. おなかが すいています。 — I'm hungry.
   This literally means "My stomach is empty."

2. おなかが いっぱい です。 — I'm full.
   This literally means "My stomach is full."

3. のどが か wa いてい ma す。 — I'm thirsty.
   This literally means "My throat is dry."

7 Grammar ぶんぽう

❑ Using で mo

で mo is used to connect two complete sentences together. The second sentence begins with で mo.

(Sentence 1). で mo, (Sentence 2).
(Sentence 1). But (Sentence 2).

Example sentences

1. Furu–tsu は おいしいです。で mo、おなかが いっぱいです。
   Fruits are delicious. But I am full.

2. のどが か wa いています。で mo、ko–ra は つ me たくない です。
   I'm thirsty. But the cola isn't cold.

3. Wa たしの konpyu–ta–は ふ ru いです。で mo、あた ra しいのは ほしくない です。
   My computer is old. But I don't want a new one.

❑ The rules for using は (wa) and が (ga)

In this lesson we will discuss some differences between は (wa) and が. This topic tends to stress out new students of Japanese, but there is nothing to worry about if you learn these simple rules!

#1. You can NEVER use は (wa) directly after a question word.

This is a simple rule with no exceptions.

INCORRECT	CORRECT
1. なには すきですか。	なにが すきですか。
2. ど re は いぬですか。	ど re が いぬですか。
3. なにい ro は すき ですか。	なにい ro が すき ですか。

#2. は (wa) is used for comparison and emphasis.

Generally speaking, adjectives such as ほしい、すき、and き ra い use が to mark the item being discussed. However, when comparing items or emphasizing, は is used instead of が.

Examples (emphasis)

1. すいか**は** おいしいです。
   Watermelons are delicious. (You are emphasizing how tasty watermelons are.)

2. Totoro (anime character)**は** おおきい です！
   Totoro is big!

Examples (comparison)

1. Mo うふ**が** ほしい です。で mo、ma く ra **は** ほしくない です。
   I want a blanket. But I don't want a pillow.

2. Rin ご**が** すきです。で mo、banana **は** き ra い です。
   I like apples. But I dislike bananas.

3. ねこ**が** ほしくない です。で mo、いぬ**は** ほしい です。
   I don't want a cat. But I want a dog.

#3. は (wa) and が can both be in the same sentence.

When は (wa) and が are in the same sentence, は marks the topic and が marks the object.

Examples

1. Wa たし**は** ねこ**が** すきです。
   I like cats.

2. Yo しおさ n **は** banana **が** ほしい です。
   Yoshio wants a banana.

#4. は (wa) should be used with new topics and conversations.

Even though your sentence will still be understood if you mix up は (wa) and が, you should always use は when introducing new topics of discussion.

As discussed in Lesson 2, after the topic is introduced, it can be dropped from the rest of the conversation. But if the topic needs to be restated OR you change topics, don't forget that は (wa) should be used.

#5. は (wa) and が are often dropped in casual conversations.

Until your Japanese is really good, we don't recommend that you drop any particles, but from time to time you will hear casual Japanese conversations where は (wa) or が have been dropped.

WITH THE PARTICLE	WITHOUT THE PARTICLE
1. ねこが すきです。 I like cats.	ねこ すきです。 I like cats.
2. おかあさ n は な n さい ですか。 How old is your mother?	おかあさ n なんさい ですか。 How old is your mother?

7 Q&A しつもんと こたえ E→J

1. **Where is it?** — **どこ ですか。**
   - It's here. — ここ です。
   - It's there. — そこ です。
   - It's outside. — そと です。
   - It's inside. — なか です。

2. **Is it here?** — **ここ ですか。**
   - Yes, it's here. — はい、ここです。
   - No, it's not here. — いいえ、ここ ja ない です。
   - No, it's over there. — いいえ、あそこです。

3. **Is it over there?** / **あそこ ですか。**
Yes, it's here. / はい、ここです。
No, it's there. / いいえ、そこです。
No, it's not over there. / いいえ、あそこ ja ない です。

4. **Where is the dog?** / **いぬは どこですか。**
The dog is over there. / いぬは あそこです。
The dog is outside. / いぬは そとです。
The dog isn't inside. / いぬは なか ja ない です。

7 Q&A しつもんと こたえ J→E

1. **いいですか** / **Is it good?**
はい, いいです。 / Yes, it's good.
いいえ、yo くないです。 / No, it's not good.

2. **どこが いいですか。** / **What place is good?**
ここが いいです。 / This place is good.
そこが いいです。 / That place is good.

3. **おいしい resutoran は どこですか。** / **Where is a good (-tasting) restaurant?**
ご men なさい、わか rima せ n. / I'm sorry, I don't know.
おいしい resutoran は あそこです。 / A good restaurant is over there.
あそこが いいです。 / That place over there is good.

4. **にほ n の く ruma が ほしい ですか。** / **Do you want a Japanese car?**
はい、にほ n の く ruma が だいすき です。 / Yes, I really like Japanese cars.
いいえ、ほしくない です。 / No, I don't want one.

7 Mini Conversation ミニかいわ J→E

1. Conversation between friends.

A: おなかが すいてい ma す。
B: Piza が ほしい ですか。
A: いいえ、すしが ほしい です。

A: I'm hungry!
B: Do you want pizza?
A: No, I want sushi.

2. **Conversation at school between friends.**

A: たなかせ n せいが すき ですか。
B: だいすきです。あなたは？
A: すき ja ない です。
B: Ja あ、だ re が すき ですか。
A: こば ya しせ n せいが すき です。

A: Do you like Mrs. Tanaka?
B: I love her! What about you?
A: I don't like (her).
B: Well then, who do you like?
A: I like Mr. Kobayashi.

3. **Conversation between friends.**

A: あなたの く ruma は おおきいですか。
B: いいえ、ちいさいです。で mo、おとうさ n の く ruma は おおきいです。
A: なにい ro ですか。
B: し ro です。

A: Is your car big?
B: No, it's small. But my father's car is big.
A: What color is it?
B: It's white.

Hiragana まみむめも

ま New Hiragana あたらしい ひらがな

Make sure you learn the correct stroke order since correct stroke order will mean neater characters when writing quickly.

MA	MI	MU	ME	MO
ま	み	む	め	も

ま Various Styles スタイル

Look at the various possible styles for the hiragana in this lesson. Write each symbol as neatly as you can, then compare it to the different versions below.

ま	ま	ま	ま	ま
み	み	み	み	み
む	む	む	む	む
め	め	め	め	め
も	も	も	も	も

ま Writing Practice れんしゅう

To practice correct stroke order, first trace the light gray characters, then write each character six times for practice.

ma	ま	ま						
mi	み	み						
mu	む	む						
me	め	め						
mo	も	も						

ま Word Practice ことばの れんしゅう

Fill in the appropriate hiragana in the blanks for each word.

1. ___ri (forest) — mo
2. ___ ___じ (maple leaf) — mo mi
3. ___ri (impossible) — mu
4. ___だつ (to stand out) — me
5. ___ru (to see, to watch) — mi
6. ___がね (eye glasses) — me
7. たべ___の (food) — mo
8. ___ ___ru (to protect) — ma mo

9. の___ ___の (a drink)
mi mo

10. ___しあつい (humid)
mu

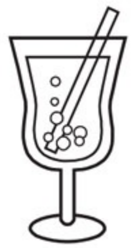
11. ___ほう (magic)
ma

12. ___ ___ず (earthworm)
mi mi

ま Everyday Hiragana Words にちじょうの ことば



yo む
to read



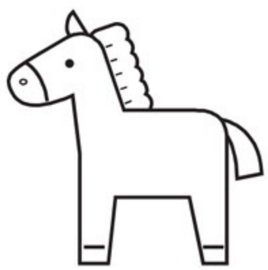
のみもの
a drink



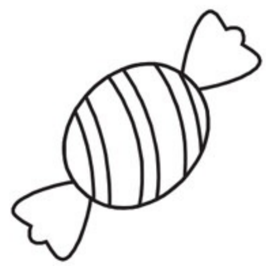
しつも n
question



なみだ
tears



うま
horse



あめ
candy

ま Words You Can Write かける ことば

Write the following words using the hiragana that you just learned. This is a great way to increase your Japanese vocabulary.

まど
(window)

もも
(peach)

むし
(insect)

かみ
(paper; hair)

だめ
(no good)

みせ
(store)

あたま
(head)

まじめ
(serious)

さしみ
(sashimi)

むすこ
(son)

むすめ
(daughter)

ものさし
(ruler)

みじかい
(short)

ま Hiragana Matching ひらがな マッチング

Connect the dots between each hiragana and the correct ro–maji.

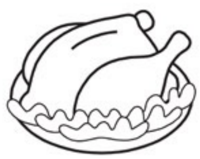
に・	・mu
む・	・mi
も・	・nu
ぬ・	・ni
み・	・o
ま・	・mo
お・	・me
め・	・ma

7 Lesson Activities

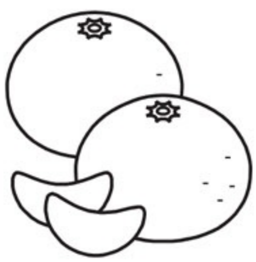
❑ Sentence creation

Create a sentence about the pictures using でも. Pay attention to the use of the particles は and が.

Example

like→  **BUT** dislike→ 

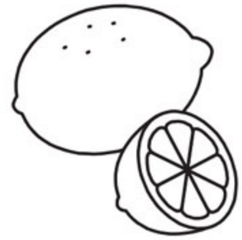
ex. Chikin が すきです。 でも、さかなは き ra いです。

like→  **BUT** don't like→ 

1. ______________________________

want→  **BUT** don't want→ 

2. ______________________________

 ←are delicious **BUT**  ←are not

3. ______________________________

❑ What would you say?

Answer the following questions as if they were being asked to you directly. Use the hiragana that you have learned when writing your answers.

1. おいしい resutoran は どこですか。

____

2. あなたの いえは、どこですか。

____

3. にほ n の く ru まが ほしいですか。

____

4. みど ri の rin ごが すきですか。

____

5. あなたの terebi は あた ra しいですか。

____

6. あなたの じて nsha は、なにい ro ですか。

____

7. つめたいみずが ほしいですか。

____

❑ Short dialogue 1

Mr. Tanaka is driving Mike (Maiku) home and asking which house is Mike's house.



たなかさ n: Maiku さ n のうちは ①あそこですか。

Maiku: いいえ、ちがいます。 ②そこです。

たなかさ n: えっ、どこですか。Wa か ri ません。
③みど ri の うちですか。

Maiku: いいえ、③みど ri の うちは、ともだちの うちです。
④きい ro い うちが wa たしのです。

たなかさ n: ああ、wa か ri ました。

New words and expressions in the dialogue

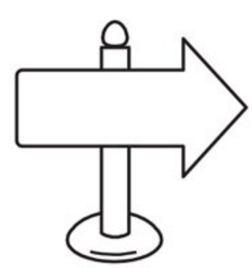
Progressive	Kana	Kanji	English
うち	うち	家	house
えっ	えっ	えっ	Eh?
ああ、wa か ri ました。	ああ、わかりました。	ああ、分かりました。	Oh, I see / I got it.

❑ Short dialogue 1 activities

1. Practice reading the dialogue in pairs.
2. Substitute the words numbered ①~④ using the words below and try the conversation again.

A) ① There
② Here
③ Brown
④ Blue

B) ① There
② Over there
③ White
④ Gray



❑ Short dialogue 2

Mr. Tanaka is taking Mike to a sushi bar.



たなか さ n:	Maiku さ n は (お)すしが すきですか。
Maiku:	はい、だいすきです。
たなか さ n:	なにが すきですか。
Maiku:	まぐ ro と えびが すきです。
たなか さ n:	そうですか。Wa たしは、ひ ra めと いかが すきです。 にほ n の お cha が、すきですか。
Maiku:	いいえ。にほ n の お cha が すき ja ないです。 でも、ko–ra は すきです。

New words and expressions in the dialogue

Progressive	Kana	Kanji	English
まぐ ro	まぐろ	鮪	tuna
えび	えび	海老	shrimp
ひ ra め	ひらめ	平目	halibut
いか	いか	イカ	squid

❑ Short dialogue 2 activities

1. Practice reading the dialogue in pairs.
2. Talk about your most/least favorite sushi.
3. Talk about your most/least favorite beverage.

❑ More words you can write

You should practice writing these words a minimum of five times each. Not only will you be practicing the new characters, but you will also learn new words.

もしもし	hello (on the phone)	しも	frost
みみ	ear	め	eye
めだつ	to stand out	むね	chest
ひま	free time	むずかしい	difficult
もくじ	contents	ななめ	diagonal
まね	imitation		

7 Drill ドリル

Translate the following sentences. If you don't know what they mean, then we recommend that you review the lesson up to this point before continuing.

1. あなたの いえは どこですか。
2. Wa たしは で nsha が すきです。でも, ひこうきは だいき ra いです。

7 Sentence Building ぶんのつくり

In each lesson we build on a previous sentence. Watch it grow and transform each time new concepts are introduced.

あなたの おかあさ n のく ru まは どこですか。
Where is your mother's car?

Compare how the sentence has changed from the prior lessons:

Lesson 4: あなたの おかあさ n の く ru まは し ro い ですか。
Is your mother's car white?

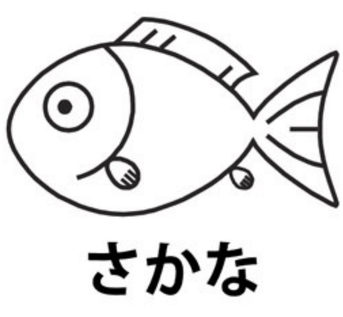
Lesson 5: あなたの おかあさ n は なにい ro の く ru まが すきですか。
What color car does your mother like?

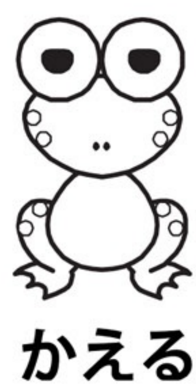
Lesson 6: あなたの おかあさ n は なにい ro の く ru まが ほしいですか。
What color car does your mother want?

Vocabulary Groups

J more animals

Progressive	Kana	Kanji	English
き ngyo	きんぎょ	金魚	goldfish
かめ	かめ	亀	tortoise; turtle
かえ ru	かえる	かえる	frog
ぶた	ぶた	豚	pig
はと	はと	はと	pigeon; dove
あひ ru	あひる	あひる	duck
かに	かに	蟹	crab
へび	へび	蛇	snake
と ri	とり	鳥	bird
robusuta–	ロブスター	ロブスター	lobster
とかげ	とかげ	とかげ	lizard
さかな	さかな	魚	fish
kyo う ryu う	きょうりゅう	恐竜	dinosaur



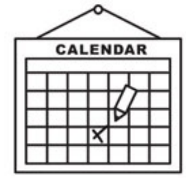




Lesson
8
Level ①

Dates and Past Tense

The calendar



8 About This Lesson このレッスンについて

Before The Lesson

1. Be able to write and read まみむめも
2. Understand how to use the question word どこ and how the particle は is used for emphasis.
3. Review vocabulary group J.

Lesson Goals

1. Learn the months, days of the month, and how to use でした.

From The Teachers

1. There are three new question words in this lesson. Many people get them mixed up. Concentrate on learning them.

2. The first ten days of the month might be somewhat difficult to remember. There is no internal pattern to them, so just memorize them. They are important because they set the pattern for other areas of counting.

8 New Phrases あたらしい かいわ

1. た njo うび おめでとう。	Happy Birthday.
2. あけまして おめでとう。	Happy New Year.
3. おめでとう。	Congratulations.

Note: You can also add ございます after おめでとう to sound more polite, but with friends and family it is not required.

8 New Words あたらしい ことば

Progressive	Kana	Kanji	English
いつ	いつ	いつ	when?
なnにち	なんにち	何日	what day of the month?
なnがつ	なんがつ	何月	what month?
kyoう	きょう	今日	today
あした	あした	明日	tomorrow
きのう	きのう	昨日	yesterday
たnjoうび	たんじょうび	誕生日	birthday
kurisumasu	クリスマス	クリスマス	Christmas
どくriつきねnび	どくりつきねんび	独立記念日	Independence Day
purezento	プレゼント	プレゼント	present, gift
goruden wi–ku	ゴールデンウィーク	ゴールデンウィーク	Golden Week
けんぽうきねnび	けんぽうきねんび	憲法記念日	Constitution Day
こどものひ	こどものひ	子供の日	Children's Day
ぶnかのひ	ぶんかのひ	文化の日	Culture Day
たいいくのひ	たいいくのひ	体育の日	Sports Day

8 Culture Clip: Christmas and other holidays in Japan



The Japanese celebrate Christmas every year, just as many westerners do. In Japan, though, it is a custom to eat a "Christmas cake" on Christmas Eve with the entire family, and on Christmas day they eat chicken.
Let's look at some other Japanese holidays:

Constitution Day (May 3)
Children's Day (May 5)
Culture Day (November 3)
Sports Day (2nd Monday in October)

Golden Week, a period of consecutive holidays, happens in the first week of May. During this week, many people return to their home towns to celebrate with family.

Days of the Month にち

1st	ついたち	ついたち	一日
2nd	ふつか	ふつか	二日
3rd	みっか	みっか	三日
4th	yo っか	よっか	四日
5th	いつか	いつか	五日
6th	むいか	むいか	六日
7th	なのか	なのか	七日
8th	yo うか	ようか	八日
9th	ここのか	ここのか	九日
10th	とおか	とおか	十日
11th	ju ういちにち	じゅういちにち	十一日
12th	ju うににち	じゅうににち	十二日
13th	ju うさ n にち	じゅうさんにち	十三日
14th	ju う yo っか	じゅうよっか	十四日
15th	ju うごにち	じゅうごにち	十五日
16th	ju う ro くにち	じゅうろくにち	十六日
17th	ju う(しち/なな)にち	じゅう(しち/なな)にち	十七日
18th	ju うはちにち	じゅうはちにち	十八日
19th	ju うくにち	じゅうくにち	十九日
20th	はつか	はつか	二十日
21st	に ju ういちにち	にじゅういちにち	二十一日
22nd	に ju うににち	にじゅうににち	二十二日
23rd	に ju うさ n にち	にじゅうさんにち	二十三日
24th	に ju う yo っか	にじゅうよっか	二十四日
25th	に ju うごにち	にじゅうごにち	二十五日
26th	に ju う ro くにち	にじゅうろくにち	二十六日
27th	に ju うしちにち	にじゅうしちにち	二十七日
28th	に ju うはちにち	にじゅうはちにち	二十八日
29th	に ju うくにち	にじゅうくにち	二十九日
30th	さ n ju うにち	さんじゅうにち	三十日
31st	さ n ju ういちにち	さんじゅういちにち	三十一日

8 Cool Tools クール・ツール

The fourth day (yo っか) and the eighth day of the month (yo うか) are often confused because they sound alike.

This hint might help: the "yo" in yo っか is short, while the "yo" in yo うか has an う after it which makes it double in length. Understanding this, remember that 8 is double 4 in order to remember that the eighth day of the month has the longer sound.

On the previous page, the 14^{th}, 20^{th} and 24^{th} have been highlighted. Pay attention to those three numbers, as they do not follow the pattern you might expect.

8 Months つき

The Japanese months are created with numbers and the Japanese kanji symbol for the moon, 月. The days of the month taught on the previous page are created with numbers and the Japanese kanji symbol for the sun, 日.

Months つき

January	いちがつ	いちがつ	一月
February	にがつ	にがつ	二月
March	さ n がつ	さんがつ	三月
April	しがつ	しがつ	四月
May	ごがつ	ごがつ	五月
June	ro くがつ	ろくがつ	六月
July	しちがつ	しちがつ	七月
August	はちがつ	はちがつ	八月
September	くがつ	くがつ	九月
October	ju うがつ	じゅうがつ	十月
November	ju ういちがつ	じゅういちがつ	十一月
December	ju うにがつ	じゅうにがつ	十二月

8 Grammar ぶんぽう

❑ Making sentences in the past tense

でした is the past tense of です. It's used exactly like です except that it makes the sentence past tense. です means, "is, am, are," etc., and でした means "was, were," etc.

[sentence] でした。
It was [sentence]

[sentence] でしたか。
Was it [sentence]?

Examples Q&A

1. く ru まは あか でしたか。 — Was the car red?
   あかの く ru ま でした。 — It was a red car.

2. Wa たし でしたか。 — Was it me?
   あなた でした。 — It was you.

3. きのうは ついたち でしたか。 — Was yesterday the 1st?
   ふつかは いつ でしたか。 — When was the 2nd?

❑ Saying dates with month and day of the month

When saying full dates – for example, "December 10th," or "the 20th of January" – you must always say the month first and then the day of the month.

MONTH + DAY OF MONTH

Examples

1. January 5th — いちがつ いつか
2. May 9th — ごがつ ここのか
3. the 22nd of December — Ju うにがつ に ju うににち

8 Q&A しつもんと こたえ J→E

1. **いつですか** — **When is it?**
   あした です。 — It's tomorrow.
   Kyoう です。 — It's today.
   きのう でした。 — It was yesterday.

2. **なnにち ですか。** — **What day of the month is it?**
   Yoっか です。 — It's the 4th.
   にjuうくにち です。 — It's the 29th.
   ついたち です。 — It's the 1st.

3. **なnがつ ですか。** — **What month is it?**
   しちがつ です。 — It's July.
   Juうにがつ です。 — It's December.
   しがつ です。 — It's April.

4. **あしたは なnにちですか。** — **What day of the month is tomorrow?**
   あしたは juうににち です。 — Tomorrow is the 12th.
   あしたは さn-juうにち です。 — Tomorrow is the 30th.
   たぶn、なのか です。 — Maybe it is the 7th.

5. **たnjoうびは なnがつ ですか。** — **What month is (your) birthday?**
   くがつ です。 — It's September.
   きのう でした。 — It was yesterday.
   あした です。 — It's tomorrow.

6. **たなかさnの たnjoうびは いつですか。** — **When is Tanaka's birthday?**
   Juうがつ にjuうroくにち です。 — It's October 26th.
   はちがつ ふつか です。 — It's August 2nd.
   ごがつ juうyoっか です。 — It's May 14th.

8 Q&A しつもんと こたえ E→J

1. **What is the month and day of Children's Day?**
   こどものひは なnがつ なnにち ですか。

   Children's Day is May 5th.
   こどものひは ごがつ いつか です。

2. **When is Culture Day?**
ぶ n かのひ は いつ ですか。

It’s November 3rd.
Ju ういちがつ みっか です。

I don’t know. But my birthday is September 5th.
Wa か ri ませ n. でも、wa たしの た njo うびは くがつ いつか です。

3. **Is your father’s birthday on May 10th?**
あなたの おとうさ n のた njo うびは ごがつ とおかですか。

Yes, it is.
はい、そうです。

No, it isn’t.
いいえ、ちがいます。

No, it is on the 11th of March.
いいえ、さ n がつ じゅういちにちです。

4. **When is (your) birthday?**
た njo うびは いつ ですか。

It's October 1st.
Ju うがつ ついたち です。

It's February 7th.
にがつ なのか です。

5. **What was the date yesterday?**
きのうは な n にち でしたか。

Yesterday was the 14th.
きのうは ju う yo っか でした。

I don’t know.
Wa か ri ませ n.

6. **Is Golden Week in July?**
   Goruden wi–ku は しちがつ ですか。

   No, it's in May.
   いいえ、ごがつ です。

   No, it's not in July.
   いいえ、しちがつ ja ない です。

7. **Was yesterday the 5th?**
   きのうは いつか でしたか。

   No it was the 9th.
   いいえ、ここのか でした。

8 Reading Comprehension どっかい

Read the sentences below. Use the information to answer the reading comprehension questions later in this lesson.

① Wa たしの なまえは ゆきこです。

② きのうは wa たしの た njo うび でした。に ju うななさいです。

③ Wa たしの た njo うびは kurisumasu です。

④ ともだちの purezento は あかい はし でした。

⑤ おとうさ n の purezento は にほ n ごの ほ n でした。

⑥ わたしは にほ n が だいすきです。





Hiragana やゆよわをん

や New Hiragana あたらしい ひらがな

Make sure you learn the correct stroke order.

YA		YU		YO
や		ゆ		よ

WA		WO		N
わ		を		ん

や Various Styles スタイル

Look at the various possible styles for the hiragana in this lesson. Write each symbol as neatly as you can, then compare it to the different versions below.

やゆよ	やゆよ	やゆよ	やゆよ	やゆよ

わをん	わをん	わをん	わをん	わをん

や Writing Practice れんしゅう

To practice correct stroke order, first trace the light gray characters, then write each character six times for practice.

ya	や	や						
yu	ゆ	ゆ						
yo	よ	よ						
wa	わ	わ						
wo	を	を						
n	ん	ん						

や Word Practice ことばの れんしゅう

Fill in the appropriate hiragana in the blanks for each word.

1. ___ra う (to laugh) — wa
2. だいこ___ (radish) — n
3. みず___のむ (to drink water) — wo
4. ___ru い (bad) — wa
5. ___たし (me, I) — wa
6. ほ___ ___かう (to buy a book) — n, wo

7. こ___ ___ (tonight, this evening)
   n ya

8. ___す reru (to forget)
   wa

9. えいが ___み ru (to watch a movie)
   wo

10. き___ぞく (metal)
    n

11. か___た___ (easy)
    n n

12. すし___たべ ru (to eat sushi)
    wo

や Special Usage とくべつな つかいかた

❑ The particle を (wo)

The hiragana を is only used as a particle (object marker). It is never used for any other purpose. Even though "wo" is normally pronounced "o", お can never replace を as a particle.

Example Sentences

1. てがみを (wo) かきます。 I will write a letter.
2. えんぴつを (wo) ください。 Give me a pencil please.

や Words You Can Write かける ことば

Write the following words using the hiragana that you just learned. This is a great way to increase your Japanese vocabulary.

わに
(alligator)

やね
(roof)

ゆび
(finger)

ゆうべ
(last night)

わかめ
(seaweed)

こんや
(tonight)

かんたん
(easy)

うわさ
(rumor)

ゆびわ
(ring)

や Everyday Hiragana Words にちじょうの ことば



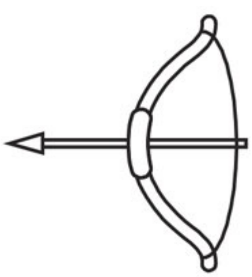
たいよう
the sun



うわぎ
jacket



ゆかた
light kimono



ゆみや
bow and arrow



かわかす
to dry



じてん sha
bicycle

や Hiragana Matching ひらがな マッチング

Connect the dots between each hiragana and the correct ro–maji.

は・	・yu
よ・	・to
ゆ・	・n
わ・	・wo (o)
と・	・ha
や・	・wa
を・	・yo
ん・	・ya

8 Lesson Activities

❑ Questions

Answer the following questions as if they were being asked to you directly. Use the hiragana that you have learned when writing your answers.

1. おとうさんのたん jo うびは いつですか。

   ____

2. Kurisumasu は、なんがつ なんにち ですか。

   ____

3. なんがつが すきですか。

   ____

4. Kyo うは、なんがつ なんにち ですか。

   ____

5. きのうは、なんがつ なんにち でしたか。

   ____

6. こどものひは しちがつよっか ですか。

   ____

❑ Dates

Write the following dates in Japanese.

1. あなたの おかあさんの たん jo うび

   ____

2. けんぽう きねんび

   ____

3. March 15

____

4. ぶんかのひ

____

5. こどものひ

____

6. April 20

____

❑ Japanese translation

Translate the following conversations into English. Then, in the space after the number write where you think the conversation is taking place and if it is polite, informal or mixed.

1.
いまいさん: たん jo うびは いつ ですか。 **やまださん:** さんがつ に ju うさんにち です。あなたのは？ **いまいさん:** わたしの たん jo うびは あしたです。 **やまださん:** おめでとう！ なんさい ですか。 **いまいさん:** さん ju う はっさい です。
いまいさん:
やまださん:
いまいさん:
やまださん:
いまいさん:

❑ Reading comprehension questions

Answer the following questions about the reading comprehension in this lesson.

1. ゆきこさんの たん jo うびは いつでしたか。

____

2. ゆきこさんは なんさい ですか。

____

3. ともだちの purezento は なにい ro の はし でしたか。

____

4. おとうさんの purezento は なんでしたか。

____

5. ゆきこさんは、にほんが き ra いですか。

____

❑ Short dialogue

While talking with Mr. Hino, Mr. Honda realizes that he forgot his girlfriend's birthday.



ほんださん: Kyo うは、なんにちですか。

ひのさん: ここのかです。

ほんださん: えっ、なのか ja ないですか。

ひのさん: いいえ、あしたは、とおかです。

ほんださん: どうしよう…。きのうは、かの jo の たん jo うびでした。

ひのさん: ほんとうですか。

New words and expressions in the dialogue

Progressive	Kana	Kanji	English
どうしよう	どうしよう	どうしよう	What shall I do?
ほんとうですか。	ほんとうですか。	本当ですか。	Really?

❑ Short dialogue activities

1. Practice reading the dialogue in pairs.
2. Talk about the dates for today, yesterday, and tomorrow.

❑ More words you can write

You should practice writing these words a minimum of five times each. Not only will you be practicing the new hiragana, but you will also learning new words.

やね	roof
ゆうえんち	fun park
およめさん	bride
きんようび	Friday
いわ	rock
みずを のむ	to drink water
たんさん	carbonation
ようちえん	kindergarten
しわ	wrinkles
しんかんせん	bullet train
うわさ	a rumor

8 Drill ドリル

Translate the following sentences. If you don't know what they mean, then we recommend that you review the lesson up to this point before continuing.

1. Kyo うは なんにち ですか。
2. あなたの たん jo うびは なんがつですか。
3. あしたは はつかですか。

8 Sentence Building ぶんのつくり

In each lesson we build on a previous sentence. Watch it grow and transform each time new concepts are introduced.

あなたの おかあさん のたん jo うびは いつですか。
When is your mother's birthday?

Compare how the sentence has changed from the prior lessons:

Lesson 5: あなたの おかあさんは なにい ro のく ru まが すきですか。
What color car does your mother like?

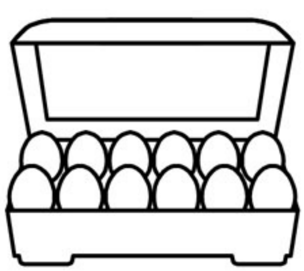
Lesson 6: あなたの おかあさんは なにい ro の く ru まが ほしいですか。
What color car does your mother want?

Lesson 7: あなたの おかあさん のく ru まは どこですか。
Where is your mother's car?

Vocabulary Groups

K food and drink

Progressive	Kana	Kanji	English
たまご	たまご	卵	egg
ごはん	ごはん	ご飯	boiled rice
miruku	ミルク	ミルク	milk
みず	みず	水	water
ju–su	ジュース	ジュース	juice
くり	くり	栗	chestnut
pan	パン	パン	bread
keeki	ケーキ	ケーキ	cake
aisu kuri–mu	アイス·クリーム	アイス·クリーム	ice cream
にんじん	にんじん	人参	carrot
tomato	トマト	トマト	tomato
だいこん	だいこん	大根	radish
たまねぎ	たまねぎ	玉ねぎ	onion
こ sho う	こしょう	こしょう	pepper
しお	しお	塩	salt
えび	えび	海老	shrimp
にく	にく	肉	meat
poteto	ポテト	ポテト	potato


たまご


アイス・クリーム


ケーキ

Lesson
9
Level ①

Days, Weeks, and Years

Next week, next month



9 About This Lesson このレッスンについて

Before The Lesson

1. Be able to write and read やゆよわをん.
2. Be able to say dates and months in Japanese and how to use でした.
3. Review vocabulary group K.

Lesson Goals

1. Learn the days of the week and years.

From The Teachers

1. The new words in this lesson are important in everyday conversations. Since some of the words are similar spend some extra time memorizing them.

9 New Words あたらしい ことば

Progressive	Kana	Kanji	English
なんようび	なんようび	何曜日	what day of the week?
なんねん	なんねん	何年	what year?
いま	いま	今	now
おととい	おととい	一昨日	day before yesterday
あさって	あさって	明後日	day after tomorrow
せん shu う	せんしゅう	先週	last week
こん shu う	こんしゅう	今週	this week
ra い shu う	らいしゅう	来週	next week
せんげつ	せんげつ	先月	last month
こんげつ	こんげつ	今月	this month
ra いげつ	らいげつ	来月	next month

kyo ねん	きょねん	去年	last year
ことし	ことし	今年	this year
ra いねん	らいねん	来年	next year
せいねんがっぴ	せいねんがっぴ	生年月日	date of birth
がんたん	がんたん	元旦	New Year's Day
pa–ti–	パーティー	パーティー	party

Days of the Week ようび

Monday	げつようび	月曜日
Tuesday	かようび	火曜日
Wednesday	すいようび	水曜日
Thursday	もくようび	木曜日
Friday	きんようび	金曜日
Saturday	どようび	土曜日
Sunday	にちようび	日曜日

9 New Phrases あたらしい かいわ

1. なんねん うま re ですか。 In what year were you born?
2. ___________ うま re です。 I was born in the year ___________.

9 Culture Clip: Japan's New Year

In Japan, the New Year is the most important holiday period. It is as important in Japan as Christmas is in the United States. From January 1st until one week after, Japan almost comes to a stop. Most stores and companies are closed while everyone celebrates the New Year.

9 Grammar ぶんぽう

❑ Expressing the year

ねん literally means "year." To say a year you simply say the number of the year and add ねん to it. In Japanese, years cannot be represented as they are in English. For example, you cannot express 1998 as "nineteen—ninety—eight." The full number must be stated.

Examples

the year 1980	せん kyu う hya くはち ju うねん
the year 1801	せんはっ pya くいちねん
the year 2010	にせん ju うねん
the year 2017	にせん ju うななねん

❑ Saying complete dates including the year

Complete dates in Japanese always start with the year, then are followed by month and day of the month. Just remember the order is always from the largest time span to the smallest.

YEAR + MONTH + DAY OF MONTH

Examples

1. May 11, 2005
   にせんごねん ごがつ juういちにち

2. January 20, 2011
   にせん juういちねん いちがつ はつか

3. April 5, 1999
   せん kyu う hya く kyu う ju う kyu う ねん しがつ いつか

4. August 30, 2015
   にせん ju うごねん はちがつ さん ju うにち

❑ Next Friday, last March, etc.

When saying things like "Monday of last week" or "May of next year", you must link the words together with の. In the following examples, の means "of". Just as in saying complete dates, the order is always from the largest time span to the smallest.

Examples

1. ra い shu うのきんようび	Friday of next week
2. こん shu うのげつようび	Monday of this week
3. ra いげつの ju うごにち	the 15th of next month
4. せんげつのついたち	the 1st of last month
5. ことしのさんがつ	March of this year
6. kyo ねんのはちがつ	August of last year
7. せん kyu う hya くご ju うねんの にがつ	February of 1950
8. にせんご hya くねんの ro くがつ	June of 2500

9 Q&A しつもんと こたえ E→J

1. **What day is it?** — **なんようび ですか。**
   It's Monday. — げつようび です。
   It's Friday. — きんようび です。
   It's Wednesday. — すいようび です。

2. **What day is today?** — **Kyo うは なんようび ですか。**
   Today is Saturday. — Kyo うは どようび です。
   Today is Sunday. — Kyo うは にちようび です。
   I don't know. — わか ri ません。

3. **When is the party?** — **Pa–ti–は いつですか。**
   The party is the day after tomorrow. — Pa–ti–は あさって です。
   The party is today. — Pa–ti–は kyo う です。
   It's Friday of next week. — Ra い shu うの きんようび です。
   It was yesterday. — きのう でした。

4. **When is Thanksgiving?** — **かん sha さいは いつですか。**
   It's on November 27th. — Ju ういちがつ に ju うななにち です。
   It was last week. — せん shu う でした。
   It was last month. — せんげつ でした。
   It's Thursday of next week. — らいしゅうの もくようび です。

5. What day was the Christmas of 1935?
せん kyu う hya くさん ju うごねんの kurisumasu は なんようび でしたか。

Maybe it was Thursday.
たぶん、もくようび でした。

It was Wednesday.
すいようび でした。

9 Reading Comprehension どっかい

Read the sentences below. Use the information to answer the reading comprehension questions later in this lesson.

① Kyo うは ju うにがつ さん ju うにちです。

② あさっては がんたんです。

③ ことしの がんたんは もくようびです。

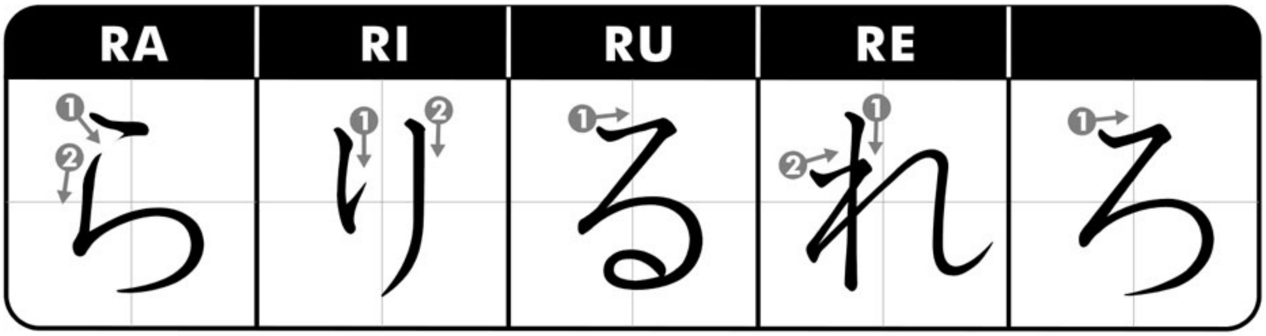
④ Kyo ねんの がんたんは すいようびでした。



Hiragana らりるれろ

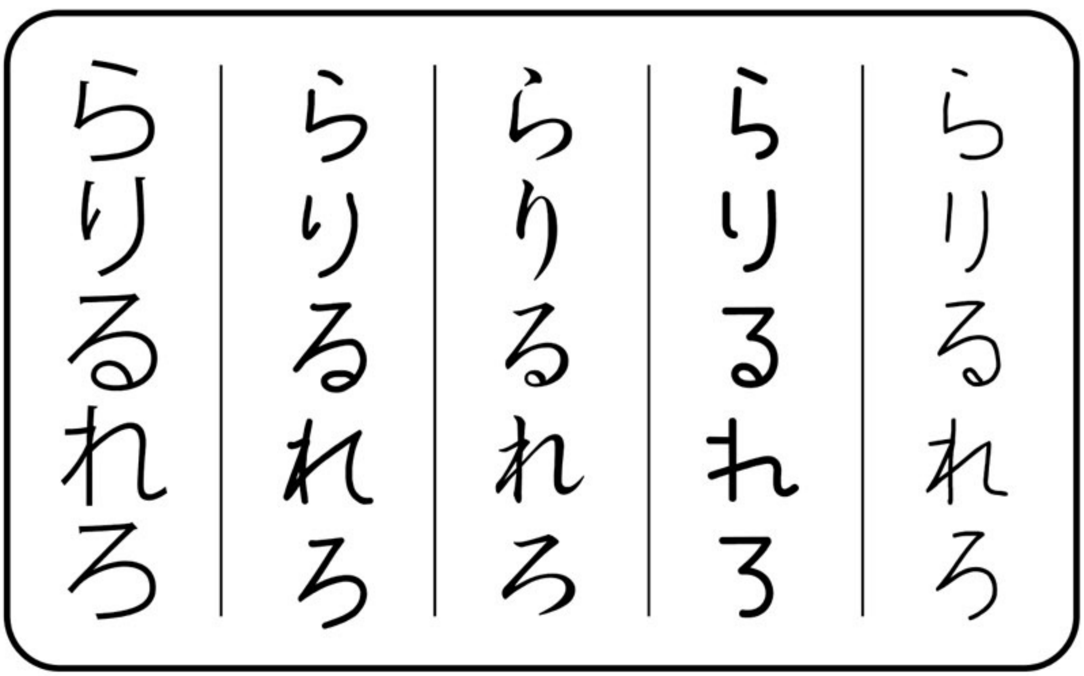
ら New Hiragana あたらしい ひらがな

Make sure you learn the correct stroke order since correct stroke order will mean neater characters when writing fast.



ら Various Styles スタイル

Write each character as neatly as you can and compare it to the different versions.



ら Writing Practice れんしゅう

To practice correct stroke order, first trace the light gray characters, then write each character six times for practice.

ra	ら	ら						
ri	り	り						
ru	る	る						
re	れ	れ						
ro	ろ	ろ						

ら Word Practice ことばの れんしゅう

Fill in the appropriate hiragana in the blanks for each word.

1. あた___しい (new)
   ra
2. し___ (to know)
   ru
3. ___んあい (true love)
   re
4. ___んご (apple)
   ri
5. みせ___ (to show)
   ru
6. ___ん shu う (practice)
   re
7. べん___ (convenient)
   ri
8. う___おい (moisture)
   ru

9. かく___んぼ (hide and seek)
re

10. どう___ (road)
ro

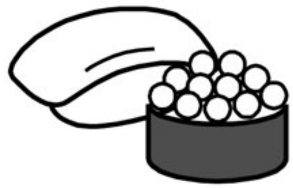
11. ___うか (hallway)
ro

12. まわ___みち (detour)
ri

ら Everyday Hiragana Words にちじょうの ことば



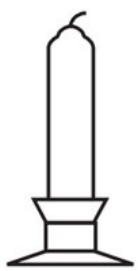
ねる
to sleep, go to bed



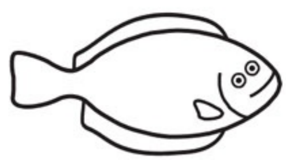
いくら
salted salmon eggs



くすり
medicine



ろうそく
candle



かれい
flounder



かみなり
thunder, lightning

ら Words You Can Write かける ことば

Write the following words using the hiragana that you just learned. This is a great way to increase your Japanese vocabulary.

りか
(science)

よる
(night)

れい
(example)

まる
(circle)

こおり
(ice)

あひる
(duck)

かえる
(frog)

りんご
(apple)

べんり
(convenient)

ひだり
(left)

みずいろ
(light blue)

きいろ
(yellow)

ろうそく
(candle)

さる
(monkey)

ら Hiragana Matching ひらがな マッチング

Connect the dots between each hiragana and the correct ro–maji.

る・	・ru
し・	・shi
り・	・re
ろ・	・i
ぬ・	・ro
れ・	・ra
い・	・nu
ら・	・ri

9 Lesson Activities

❑ Event dates

Write the corresponding events and dates in Japanese for the following pictures.

1.



event: ______________________

date: ______________________

2.



event: ______________________

date: ______________________

3.



event: ______________________

date: ______________________

4.



event: ______________________

date: ______________________

❑ Questions

Answer the following questions as if they were being asked to you directly. Use the hiragana that you have learned when writing your answers.

1. あさっては なんようび ですか。

2. おとといは なんがつ なんにち でしたか。

3. たん jo うびは、なんがつ なんにち ですか。

4. Kyo ねんは なんねん でしたか。

5. せんげつの ついたちは なんようび でしたか。

6. らい shu うの もくようびは なんにち ですか。

7. せん shu うの どようびは なんにち でしたか。

8. らいねんは、なんねんですか。

❑ Japanese translation

Translate the reading comprehension in this lesson into English.

①
②
③
④

❑ Short dialogue

Youko and Takahiro are talking about their birthdays.

ようこ:	こん shu うの きんようびは わたしの たん jo うびです。
たかひろ:	そうですか。たん jo うび おめでとう。
ようこ:	ありがとう。
たかひろ:	なんねんうまれですか。
ようこ:	せん kyu う hya くなな ju うさんねんうまれです。
たかひろ:	わたしも です。わたしの たん jo うびは せん kyu う hya くなな ju うさんねんの ろくがつ みっかです。
ようこ:	ほんとう？
たかひろ:	たん jo うび pa–ti–は、いつですか。
ようこ:	こん shu うの どようびです。

New words and expressions in the dialogue

Progressive	Kanji	English
ほんとう？	本当？	Is that true? Really?
わたしも	私も	Me too.

❑ Short dialogue activities

Practice reading the dialogue in pairs.
Talk about your birthday (including the year) with your partner.



Use the following questions:

1. たん jo うびは いつですか / なんがつなんにちですか。
2. なんねんうまれですか。

❑ More words you can write

You should practice writing these words a minimum of five times each. Not only will you be practicing new hiragana, but you will also learn new words.

らんぼう	violence	こんらん	confusion
あらし	a storm	れんらく	contact
かみなり	thunder; lightning	どろぼう	a thief
どんぐり	acorn	ろうじん	old person
れいぞうこ	refrigerator	らくがき	graffiti
りゆう	a reason	ろうか	hallway
かいろ	heat pad	わすれもの	forgotten item
めじるし	landmark	めずらしい	rare (adj.)
くるま	car		

9 Drill ドリル

Translate the following sentences. If you don't know what they mean, then it is recommended that you review the lesson up to this point before continuing.

1. Kyo うは なんようび ですか。
2. きんようびは なんにちですか。
3. らい shu うの にちようびは わたしの ともだちの た njo うび です。
4. Kyo ねんの にがつは さむかったですか。

9 Sentence Building ぶんのつくり

In each lesson we will build on a previous sentence. The previous sentence was あなたの おかあさん のたん jo うびは いつですか.

ことし、あなたの おかあさんの たん jo うびは なんようび でしたか。
On what day of the week was your mother's birthday this year?

Compare how the sentence has changed from the prior lessons:

Lesson 6: あなたの おかあさんは なにいろの くるまが ほしいですか。
What color car does your mother want?

Lesson 7: あなたの おかあさんのくるまは どこですか。
Where is your mother's car?

Lesson 8: あなたの おかあさんのたん jo うびは いつですか。
When is your mother's birthday?

Vocabulary Groups

L nature

Progressive	Kanji	English
やま	山	mountain
あめ	雨	rain
たいよう	太陽	sun
つき	月	moon
ゆき	雪	snow
はる	春	spring
なつ	夏	summer
あき	秋	autumn, fall
ふゆ	冬	winter

Lesson
10
Level ①

Asking for Things
Give me something, please.



10 About This Lesson このレッスンについて

Before The Lesson

1. Be able to write and read らりるれろ.
2. Review vocabulary group L.

Lesson Goals

1. Learn how to ask for things using “please”.
2. Learn how to specify one item over another using "this" and "that".

From The Teachers

1. Memorize the new phrases in this lesson. They will come in handy later.

10 New Phrases あたらしい かいわ

1. いらっ sha いませ。 — Welcome! (at a place of business)
2. Sho う sho う おまちください。 — Please wait a moment. (very polite)
3. Cho っと まってください。 — Wait a minute. (informal)

4. なにが いいですか。 — What would you like?
   This can also mean “what is good?” depending on the conversation.

5. ________が いいです。 — I would like a ___________.
   This is a response to なにが いいですか。

6. ありがとう ございました。 — Thank you very much. (past tense)
   This is used to say “thank you” for something that has already been done.

7. どうぞ。 — Here you go. / Go ahead.

10 New Words あたらしい ことば

Progressive	Kana	Kanji	English
いくら	いくら	いくら	How much?
menyu–	メニュー	メニュー	menu
poteto	ポテト	ポテト	French fries
chi–zuba–ga–	チーズバーガー	チーズバーガー	cheeseburger
piza	ピザ	ピザ	pizza
supagetti–	スパゲッティー	スパゲッティー	spaghetti
bi–fu	ビーフ	ビーフ	beef
sandoicchi	サンドイッチ	サンドイッチ	sandwich
sando	サンド	サンド	sandwich (short vers.)
deza–to	デザート	デザート	dessert
あっ！	あっ！	あっ！	Oh!
おつり	おつり	お釣	change
(お) のみもの	(お) のみもの	飲み物	a drink
たべもの	たべもの	食べ物	food
おかし	おかし	お菓子	a snack
みそしる	みそしる	味噌汁	miso soup
おひや	おひや	お冷	cold drinking water
お cha	おちゃ	お茶	green tea

10 Grammar ぶんぽう

Please give me (standard)

ください is an equivalent of the English word “please.” ください is always used in a sentence and cannot be used by itself. The direct object particle を marks the object being requested.

Give me [*something*], please.
[*something*] を ください。

Examples sentences

1. Give me some water, please. みずを ください。
2. Please give me a pencil. えんぴつを ください。
3. An apple, please. りんごを ください。

❑ Please give me (polite)

おねがい します basically means "please" or "I request of you." It's used the same way ください is used, but is a more polite way to ask for something. The object marker を marks the object being requested.

Would you please give me [something]
[something] を おねがい します。

Examples sentences

1. みずを おねがい します。 Would you please give me some water?
2. えんぴつを おねがい します。 Would you please give me a pencil?
3. りんごを おねがい します。 Would you please give me an apple?

Unlike ください, おねがいします can be used alone to just say "please" or "I request."

Example conversation

1. A: のみものが ほしい ですか。 Do you want a drink?
   B: おねがい します。 Please.
   A: はい、どうぞ。 Here you go.
   B: ありがとう ございました。 Thank you.

❑ The difference between ください and おねがい します

ください and おねがい します are both polite. Normally you can use ください without being considered rude at all. In situations where you are requesting something from someone above you in status, or in situations where you wish to be more polite, then おねがい します should be used.

❑ The particle も

The particle も means "too" or "also". Like the other particles you have learned, it comes after the word it is referring to. When it is applied to the topic of the sentence it takes the place of は or が completely.

Example Conversations

1. A: なにが すきですか。	What do you like?
B: Banana が すきです。	I like bananas.
りんごも すきです。	I like apples too.
2. A: なにが いいですか。	What would you like?
B: Robusuta–とお cha をください。	Give me a lobster and tea please.
A: わたしも お cha をください。	Give me tea also.
3. A: わたしは じてん sha が きらいです。	I dislike bicycles.
B: わたしも きらいです。	I also dislike them.
4. A: わたしは 1998 ねん うまれです。	I was born in 1998.
B: わたしも 1998 ねん うまれです。	I was also born in 1998.
みか cha んも 1998 ねん うまれです。	Mika was also born in 1998.

❑ A funny problem with particle choice

Even native Japanese speakers make the common mistake of telling a girl, "You are pretty today," by saying:

Kyo うは きれい です。
You are pretty today.

The trap is how the particle は puts emphasis on kyo う. You are saying, "As for today, you are pretty," and this implies all other days she is not pretty! Typically, you can avoid this by changing the は to a も:

Kyo うも きれい です。
You are pretty today also.

This problem can happen anytime you give someone a compliment. So make sure to choose your particles wisely!

❑ Sizes

In this lesson sizes are introduced with the words *esu* (S), *emu* (M), and *eru* (L). As you can tell, the sizes are words borrowed from English. These words are the most common way to describe the sizes of clothing or the food served in fast food restaurants. To say, "large cola," you can't just string *eru* and *ko–ra* together. You must make *eru* into a の adjective by adding の. This is the pattern for all size words.

Examples

1. Esu の ko–ra と emu の poteto を おねがいします。
   Please give me a small cola and medium fries.

2. Eru の piza が ほしいです。
   I want a large pizza.

10 Q&A しつもんと こたえ J→E

1. Conversation between a waitress and a customer

A: いらっ sha いませ。
B: おはよう ございます。 ここは なにが おいしいですか。
A: ここは chikin sando がおいしいです。Supagetti–も おいしいです。
B: Ja あ、supagetti–を ください。

A: Welcome to the store.
B: Good morning. What tastes good here?
A: The chicken sandwich is delicious. The spaghetti is also delicious.
B: Well then, some spaghetti please.

2. Conversation in a sandwich shop

A: すみません、chikin su–pu は いくらですか。
B: さん bya くえん です。
A: Ja あ、ko–ra と chikin su–pu を ください。

A: Excuse me, how much is chicken soup?
B: It's 300 yen.
A: Well then, give me a cola and chicken soup, please.

3. Conversation at a fast food restaurant counter

A: Chi–zuba–ga–をください。あっ、poteto もください。
B: おのみものは？
A: Ko–hi–をください。
B: はい、sho う sho う おまちください。

A: A cheeseburger, please. Oh, and fries too, please.
B: Would you like a drink?
A: A coffee, please.
B: Please wait a few moments.

4. Conversation in a pizza restaurant

A: Piza を おねがいします。Ko–ra も おねがいします。
B: はい、わかりました。

A: Would you please give me some pizza? A cola also, please.
B: Okay.

10 Q&A しつもんと こたえ E→J

1. Conversation at a friend's house

A: Would you please give me some chopsticks?
B: What?
A: Chopsticks, please.

A: おはしを おねがいします。
B: なん ですか。
A: おはしを ください。

2. Conversation in a pizza restaurant

A: Excuse me. I want a pizza. How much are they?
B: Pizzas are 1200 yen.
A: They sure are cheap.

A: すみません。 Piza が ほしいです。いくら ですか。
B: Piza は せんに hya くえん です。
A: やすい ですね。

3. Conversation in a restaurant

A: Excuse me. What is good (delicious) today?
B: The beef soup is good today. But the chicken soup is also good.
A: Well then, give me the beef soup, please.

A: すみません。 kyo うは なにが おいしいですか。
B: Kyo うは bi–fu su–pu が おいしいです。でも、chikin su–pu も おいしいです。
A: Ja あ, bi–fu su–pu を ください。

4. Conversation in a restaurant

A: Some miso soup, please.
B: Ok, please wait a few minutes.
B: (5 minutes later) Here you go.
A: Some cold water also, please.

A: みそしるを おねがいします。
B: はい、sho う sho うおまち ください。
B: (5 minutes later) はい、どうぞ。
A: おひやも おねがいします。

10 Reading Comprehension どっかい

Read the conversations below. If you don't understand them, review this lesson's grammar.

The following conversation takes place in a restaurant in Japan.	
A customer enters a restaurant…	
Waitress:	いらっ sha いませ！
Customer:	menyu–をおねがいします。
5 minutes later…	
Customer:	すみません。
Waitress:	はい。
Customer:	supagetti–を ください。
Waitress:	おのみものは なにが いいですか。
Customer:	みずを ください。
Waitress:	はい、sho う sho う おまちください。
10 minutes later…	
Waitress:	はい、どうぞ
Customer:	ありがとう。お cha と ko–ra をください。
Waitress:	はい、sho う sho う おまちください。
40 minutes later…	
Customer:	いくら ですか
Waitress:	にせん ご hya く に ju う いちえんです。
Customer:	はい。
Waitress:	おつりは よん hya く なな ju う kyu うえんです。 ありがとう ございました。

Compound Hiragana

The final hiragana are easy! There are only 33 official hiragana left to learn - but don't let that number scare you. They are all made up of the hiragana that you already know. Just by looking at them you should already have an idea of the sound that they represent.

Examples

き (ki)	+	や (ya)	=	きゃ (kya)
し (shi)	+	ゆ (yu)	=	しゅ (shu)
ち (chi)	+	よ (yo)	=	ちょ (cho)

きゃ Writing Points かくポイント

❑ The correct way to write compound hiragana

When writing compound hiragana, make sure that the second character is visibly smaller than the first character.

ro–maji	correct	incorrect
mya	みゃ	みや
ryo	りょ	りよ
chu	ちゅ	ちゆ
kya	きゃ	きや
pya	ぴゃ	ぴや

❑ Compound Hiragana

The following are the compound hiragana. They are created using the hiragana you already know so you should have no problem learning these.

きゃ kya	きゅ kyu	きょ kyo
ぎゃ gya	ぎゅ gyu	ぎょ gyo
しゃ sha	しゅ shu	しょ sho
じゃ ja	じゅ ju	じょ jo
ちゃ cha	ちゅ chu	ちょ cho
にゃ nya	にゅ nyu	にょ nyo

ひゃ hya	ひゅ hyu	ひょ hyo
びゃ bya	びゅ byu	びょ byo
ぴゃ pya	ぴゅ pyu	ぴょ pyo
みゃ mya	みゅ myu	みょ myo
りゃ rya	りゅ ryu	りょ ryo

きゃ Writing Practice れんしゅう

To practice correct stroke order, first trace the light gray characters, then write each character six times for practice.

KYA	き	ゃ						
KYU	き	ゅ						
KYO	き	ょ						

GYA	ぎゃ
GYU	ぎゅ
GYO	ぎょ

SHA	しゃ
SHU	しゅ
SHO	しょ

JA	じゃ
JU	じゅ
JO	じょ

CHA	ちゃ
CHU	ちゅ
CHO	ちょ

NYA	にゃ							
NYU	にゅ							
NYO	にょ							

HYA	ひゃ							
HYU	ひゅ							
HYO	ひょ							

BYA	びゃ							
BYU	びゅ							
BYO	びょ							

PYA	ぴゃ							
PYU	ぴゅ							
PYO	ぴょ							

MYA	み	ゃ						
MYU	み	ゅ						
MYO	み	ょ						

RYA	り	ゃ						
RYU	り	ゅ						
RYO	り	ょ						

きゃ Word Practice ことばの れんしゅう

Fill in the appropriate hiragana in the blanks for each word.

1. とう___く (arrival) — cha
2. さん___く (three hundred) — bya
3. と___かん (library) — sho
4. ___う___う (cow's milk) — gyu, nyu
5. さん___く (mountain range) — mya
6. ___うばい (business, commerce) — sho
7. ___うたん (carpet) — ju
8. でん___う (sales slip, voucher) — pyo
9. ___うだい (siblings) — kyo
10. ___う___う (dinosaur) — kyo, ryu
11. ___うがく (study abroad) — ryu
12. ___ うどん (beef bowl) — gyu

きゃ Words You Can Write かける ことば

Write the following words using the hiragana compounds that you've learned in this lesson. This is a great way to increase your Japanese vocabulary.

ちょう (butterfly)

きゅう (nine)

びょうき (sick)

じゅう
(ten)

りゅう
(dragon)

ぎゃく
(reverse)

みょうじ
(last name)

しゅうり
(repair)

きょく
(a song)

きょうと
(Kyoto)

りょこう
(travel)

かいしゃ
(company)

でんしゃ
(train)

きんぎょ
(gold fish)

ちゃわん
(bowl)

きゃ Everyday Hiragana Words にちじょうの ことば



ちきゅうぎ
globe



しゅう
state



おちゃ
tea



べんきょう
study



ちゅうしゃ
shot



しゅうり
repair

きゃ Hiragana Matching ひらがな マッチング

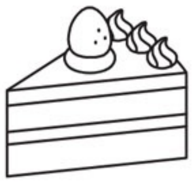
Connect the dots between each hiragana and the correct ro–maji.

ぎゃ・	・nyu
みょ・	・shu
しゅ・	・rya
ぴょ・	・ja
りゃ・	・myo
ちょ・	・pyo
じゃ・	・cho
にゅ・	・gya

10 Lesson Activities

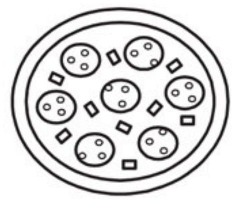
❑ Grammar drill 1

How would you order the following items at a restaurant? Use both ～をおねがいします and ～をください. Use と (and) if necessary.



1. ____________________

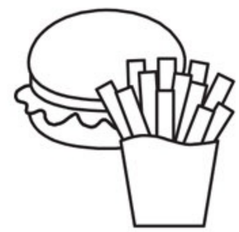
2. ____________________





3. ____________________

4. ____________________



❑ Grammar drill 2

Answer the following questions in Japanese. Then add a second sentence using the particle も (also) or でも (but) as shown in the examples.

Ex. いぬが すきですか。

- はい、いぬが すきです。 ねこも すきです。
- いいえ、いぬが きらいです。 ねこも きらいです。
- いいえ、いぬが きらいです。 でも、ねこは すきです。

1. あたらしい terebi が ほしいですか。

____

2. はるが すきですか。

____

3. Ko–ra は、おいしいですか。

____

4. あなたの くるまは、おおきいですか。

____

❑ Conversation creation

Write an original conversation using the concepts learned in this lesson. Test yourself by using all of the hiragana that you have learned in this course.

❑ Japanese translation

Translate the reading comprehension in this lesson into English.

A customer enters a restaurant…	
Waitress:	______________________________
Customer:	______________________________
5 minutes later…	
Customer:	______________________________
Waitress:	______________________________
Customer:	______________________________
Waitress:	______________________________
Customer:	______________________________
Waitress:	______________________________
10 minutes later…	
Waitress:	______________________________
Customer:	______________________________
Waitress:	______________________________

40 minutes later…

Customer: ______________________________

Waitress: ______________________________

Customer: ______________________________

Waitress: ______________________________

____

❑ Short dialogue

Sayuri and Chieko are at a Japanese restaurant ordering food and drinks.

Waitress: いらっしゃいませ。Menyu–を どうぞ。

さゆり: ここは てんぷらが おいしいです。

ちえこ: そうですか。じゃあ、てんぷらが いいです。

さゆり: わたしも てんぷらが すきです。でも、きょうは とんかつが いいです。

ちえこ: じゃあ、てんぷらと とんかつを おねがいします。

Waitress: かしこまりました。 おのみものは なにが よろしいですか。

さゆり: Aisu ti– を ください。

ちえこ: わたしは おちゃを おねがいします。

Waitress: かしこまりました。



__New words and expressions in the dialogue__

Progressive	Kanji	English
てんぷら	天ぷら	deep-fried vegetables or seafood
とんかつ	豚カツ	pork cutlet
なにが よろしいですか。*	何が よろしいですか。	What would you like?
かしこまりました。	かしこまりました。	Certainly; Very well.
aisu ti–	アイスティー	iced tea

* more polite version of なにが __いい__ですか？

❑ Short dialogue activities

1. Practice reading the dialogue in pairs.
2. Imagine you are at a restaurant. Practice ordering food and a drink.

❑ More words you can write

You should practice writing these words a minimum of five times each. Not only will you be practicing the new hiragana but you will also learn new words.

おきゃくさん	a customer or guest	しゅじゅつ	surgery
じょうだん	a joke	じゅうたん	carpet
かいじゅう	a monster	はっぴょう	an announcement

10 Drill ドリル

Translate the following sentences. If you don't know what they mean, we recommended that you review the lesson up to this point before continuing.

1. Supagetti–をください。
2. Menyu–を おねがいします。みずも おねがいします。
3. なにが いいですか。

10 Sentence Building ぶんのつくり

In this lesson we are starting a new sentence to build on. Watch it grow and transform as new concepts are introduced.

Sando をください。
A sandwich, please.

Vocabulary Groups

M direction words

Progressive	Kanji	English
みぎ	右	right
ひだり	左	left
うえ	上	up
した	下	down
きた	北	north
ひがし	東	east
みなみ	南	south
にし	西	west

N things around the house II

Progressive	Kanji	English
かさ	傘	umbrella
いえ	家	house
でんわ	電話	telephone
かぎ	鍵	key
いす	椅子	chair
ごみばこ	ごみ箱	trash can
toire	トイレ	toilet







Lesson
11
Level ①

Counting Objects

Various counting units



11 About This Lesson このレッスンについて

Before The Lesson

1. Be able to write and read compound ひらがな.
2. Understand Japanese basic counting and how to ask for things.
3. Review vocabulary groups M and N.

Lesson Goals

1. Learn how to count various objects depending on their characteristics.

From The Teachers

1. Pay special attention to the counters taught in this lesson. You will sound strange if you mix them up. Also, if you are not strong in the area of counting, now would be the time to review the Pre-Lesson on counting.

11 Explanation せつめい

Counting things in Japanese is not quite the same as in English. In Japanese, things are counted differently based on their shape or classification. Wow, that *is* strange! …Or so many people say. If you think about it, we have a similar system in English.

We also count things differently based on what the item is. For example, “one *slice* of pizza,” “two *head* of cattle,” “a *school* of fish” or “a *flock* of birds” are all things we say in English without batting an eye. In this lesson we will introduce four of the most commonly used Japanese counting systems.

11 Counters カウンター

How Many ?	General / Abstract Objects	Small / Round General Objects	Long / Cylindrical Objects	Thin and Flat Objects
	いくつ？	なんこ？	なんぼん？	なんまい？
1	ひとつ	いっこ	いっぽん	いちまい
2	ふたつ	にこ	にほん	にまい
3	みっつ	さんこ	さんぼん	さんまい
4	よっつ	よんこ	よんほん	よんまい
5	いつつ	ごこ	ごほん	ごまい
6	むっつ	ろっこ	ろっぽん	ろくまい
7	ななつ	ななこ	ななほん	ななまい
8	やっつ	はっこ	はっぽん / はちほん	はちまい
9	ここのつ	きゅうこ	きゅうほん	きゅうまい
10	とお	じゅっこ じっこ	じゅっぽん じっぽん	じゅうまい
11	じゅういっこ	じゅういっこ	じゅういっぽん	じゅういちまい
12	じゅうにこ	じゅうにこ	じゅうにほん	じゅうにまい
13	じゅうさんこ	じゅうさんこ	じゅうさんぼん	じゅうさんまい
14	じゅうよんこ	じゅうよんこ	じゅうよんほん	じゅうよんまい
15	じゅうごこ	じゅうごこ	じゅうごほん	じゅうごまい
16	じゅうろっこ	じゅうろっこ	じゅうろっぽん	じゅうろっまい
17	じゅうななこ	じゅうななこ	じゅうななほん	じゅうななまい
18	じゅうはっこ	じゅうはっこ	じゅうはっぽん	じゅうはっまい
19	じゅうきゅうこ	じゅうきゅうこ	じゅうきゅうほん	じゅうきゅうまい
20	にじゅっこ にじっこ	にじゅっこ にじっこ	にじゅっぽん にじっぽん	にじゅっまい
100	ひゃっこ	ひゃっこ	ひゃっぽん	ひゃくまい
1000	せんこ	せんこ	せんぼん	せんまい

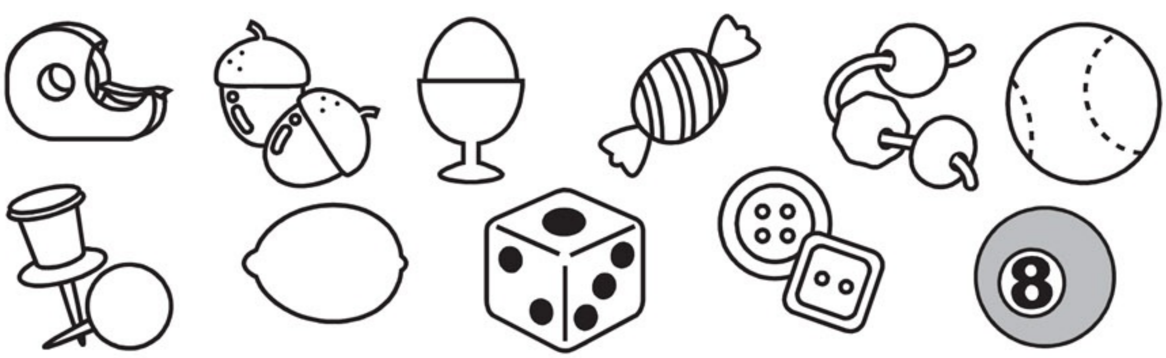
NOTE: As you can see, after ten items, each counter continues into infinity following the pattern of the first ten numbers and the basic rules of counting. After ten items, the いくつ counter follows the pattern of the なんこ counter.

General / Abstract Objects いくつ



The いくつ counter is the most common and versatile counter. It can be used to count almost anything – physical objects as well as abstract objects, such as problems or ideas. It cannot be used to count people, animals, or animated living creatures, and is not normally used to count large objects such as airplanes. Many Japanese use this counter even though a more proper counter exists. Always try to use the correct counter to identify what you are counting, but when in doubt use this counter. This counter changes to the なんこ counter after 10.

Round / General Objects なんこ



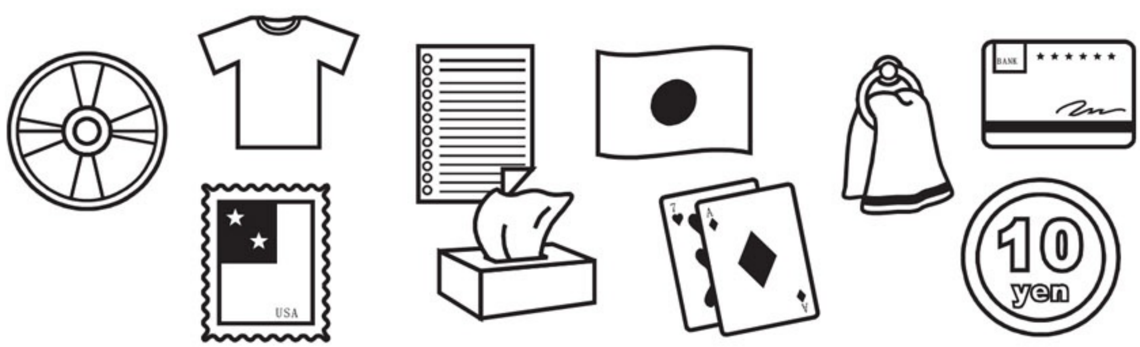
The なんこ counter is used when counting round objects such as fruit, balls, etc... The objects being counted do not have to be perfectly round. The なんこ counter can also be used as a general counter like いくつ. It cannot, however, be used to count abstract objects in the way that いくつ is used.

Long / Cylindrical Objects なんぼん



The なんぼん counter is used to count objects that are long and cylindrical in shape, such as bottles of cola, pens, legs and flowers (due to the stem). It is also used to count some items that might not seem to be long or cylindrical, such as video cassettes, teeth, and numbers of flights. Don't be surprised to hear this counter in a variety of situations.

Thin / Flat Objects なんまい



The なんまい counter is used to count objects that are thin and flat, such as paper, tickets, plates, and compact discs. It cannot be used to count books, magazines, etc. These use the published materials counter さつ.

11 New Words あたらしい ことば

Progressive	Kana	Kanji	English
いくつ	いくつ	いくつ	How many things?
なんこ	なんこ	何個	How many round objects?
なんぼん	なんぼん	何本	How many cylindrical objects?

なんまい	なんまい	何枚	How many thin and flat objects?
かみ	かみ	紙	paper
chiketto	チケット	チケット	tickets
はな	はな	花	flowers
はた	はた	旗	flag
ほし	ほし	星	star (in the sky)
karenda–	カレンダー	カレンダー	calendar

11 Grammar ぶんぽう

❑ The counters and particles

In the previous lesson about ください and おねがい します, you learned that the object particle を follows the item being requested. However, this is only true for the object of a sentence and NOT the counter. No matter which counter is being used, particles are not necessary after the counters.

Examples

(general, abstract objects)

1. ひとつ ください。	One, please.
2. まくらを みっつください。	Three pillows, please.
3. いすを いつつ ください。	Five chairs, please.

(round, general objects)

4. よんこ ください。	Four, please.
5. りんごを にこ ください。	Two apples, please.
6. Orenji を じゅっこ ください。	Ten oranges, please.

(long, cylindrical objects)

7. ろっぽん ください。	Six, please.
8. えんぴつを いっぽん ください。	One pencil, please.
9. Banana を ななほん ください。	Seven bananas, please.

(thin, flat objects)

10. よんまい ください。	Four, please.
11. Piza を にまい ください。	Two slices of pizza, please.
12. かみを ごひゃくまい ください。	Five hundred pieces of paper, please.

❑ More

あと means "more," "else," "in addition" and sometimes "other." It is placed in front of numbered things in the following ways. It is okay to add は after あと.

Example Q&A

1. **あと いくら ですか。**
   How much more is it?

   あと ごひゃくえん です。
   It's five hundred yen more.

2. **あとは どこの resutoran が おいしいですか。**
   What other restaurant is delicious?

   わたしの hoteru の resutoran が おいしいです。
   The restaurant in my hotel is delicious.

Example Conversations

1. Conversation between friends.

A: なにが すきですか。	What do you like?
B: すしと piza が すきです。	I like sushi and pizza.
A: あと、なにが すきですか。	What else do you like?
B: あとは、さしみが すきです。	In addition, I like sashimi.

2. Conversation between friends.

A: あとは なにが いいですか。	What else would you like?
B: みずと supu–n をください。	Some water and a spoon, please.
A: はい しょうしょう おまちください。	Please wait a few moments.

11 Q&A しつもんと こたえ E→J

1. **How many cups are there?** — **Koppu は いくつ ですか。**
   There are five cups. — Koppu は いつつ です。
   There is one. — ひとつ です。

2. **How many oranges are there?** — **Orenji は なんこ / いくつ ですか。**
   There are six oranges. — Orenji は ろっこ / むっつ です。
   There are three. — みっつ です。/ さんこ です。

3. **How many pencils are there?** **えんぴつは なんぼん ですか。**
There are two pencils. えんぴつは にほん です。
There are 22 pencils. えんぴつは にじゅうにほん です。
There are ten. じゅっぽん です。

4. **How many tickets are there?** **Chiketto は なんまい ですか。**
There are seven tickets. Chiketto は ななまい です。
There are 100 tickets. Chiketto は ひゃくまい です。
There are twelve. じゅうにまいです。

5. **How many pink flowers are there?** **Pinku のはなは なんぼん ですか。**
There is one pink flower. Pinku のはなは いっぽん です。
There are three. さんぼん です。

6. **How many purple stars are there?** **むらさきの ほしは いくつ ですか。**
There are 39 purple stars. むらさきの ほしは さんじゅうきゅうこです。
There are 70 purple stars. むらさきの ほしは ななじゅっこです。

7. **What would you like?** **なにが いいですか。**
Three slices of pizza please. Piza を さんまい ください。
Some water and a banana please. みずと banana を いっぽん ください。

11 Q&A しつもんと こたえ J→E

1. **Karenda–は なんまい ですか。** **How many calendars are there?**
ななじゅういちまい です。 There are 71.
Hya くにじゅうごまい です。 There are 125.
いちまん よんせんまい です。 There are 14,000.

2. **Ko–ra は なんぼん ですか。** **How many colas are there?**
はっぽん です。 There are eight.
よんほん です。 There are four.

3. **Ko–ra は あと なんぼん ですか。** **How many more cans of cola?**
あと ろっぽん ください。 Six more cans, please.
あと いっぽん ください。 One more can, please.

4. **あとは いくつが いいですか。** **How many more would you like?**
あと ふたつ ください。 Two more, please.
あと じゅうろっこ ください。 Sixteen more, please.

5. **Banana は なんぼん ですか。** じゅうごほん です。 たぶん ろっぽん です。

How many bananas are there? There are 15. Maybe there are six.

6. **Piza は なんまい ほしい ですか。** さんまい ほしい です。 Piza は ほしくない です。

How many pieces pizzas do you want? I want three. I don't want any pizza.

11 Mini Conversations ミニ かいわ

1. Conversation at a ticket booth for a concert

A: Four tickets, please.
B: Okay.
A: Oh! Two more tickets, please.
B: Okay. Seven, right?
A: No, that's wrong. Six tickets, please.

A: Chiketto を よんまい ください。
B: はい。
A: あっ、あと にまい ください。
B: はい。ななまい ですね。
A: いいえ、ちがいます。chiketto を ろくまい ください。

2. Conversation at a drink stand at the beach

A: Please give me some cola.
B: How many?
A: Two, please.

A: Ko–ra を ください。
B: なんぼん ですか。
A: にほん ください。

Hiragana: The Next Step

Congratulations on learning hiragana!
Here are some tips to help you reinforce what you have learned:

Let's put hiragana in our daily lives!
Write words in hiragana on "post it" notes and then stick them on items around your house. You can even write しお and こしょう on your salt and pepper shakers using a permanent marker. This will enforce your skills even when you aren't thinking about it.







Read manga!
Some manga (Japanese comics) and children's books will have small hiragana next to any kanji used in dialogue. When hiragana is used in this way it is called "furigana". Look for furigana when purchasing manga to help you study. It's like Japanese on training wheels!



Keep on learning!
Your next step is to learn katakana! You have come this far, so keep up the momentum. We are sure you will also enjoy learning katakana in "Japanese From Zero!" Book 2.

11 Lesson Activities

❑ Japanese questions

Answer the following questions as if they were being asked to you directly. Write all the answers in hiragana (except for the katakana words).

1. うまの あしは なんぼん ですか。

___

2. Amerika の はたの ほしは なんこ ですか。

___

3. えんぴつが なんぼん ほしいですか。

___

4. Piza が なんまい ほしいですか。

___

❑ English questions

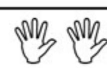
Translate then answer the following questions in Japanese. Write all your answers in hiragana.

1. How many white stars are there? 

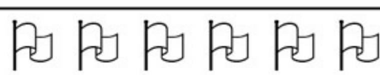
___

2. How many pencils are there? 

___

3. How many fingers are there? (including thumbs!) 

___

4. How many flags are there? 

___

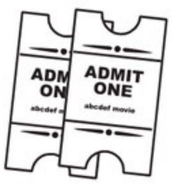
5. How many clocks are there? 

❑ Grammar drill

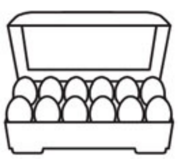
How would you ask for the following items? Write the sentences with おねがいします and ください. Make sure you use an appropriate counter and amount in each sentence.

Ex. 

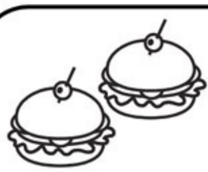
Keeki を みっつ ください。
Keeki を みっつ おねがいします。



1.

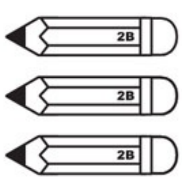


2.

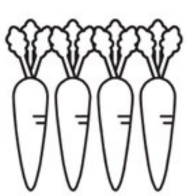


cheeseburgers

3.



4.



5.

❑ Short dialogue

Jon and Masami are at a sushi bar.

Sushi chef:	いらっしゃい。
Jon:	すみません、いくらと はまちを ください。
Sushi chef:	はい！ そちらの おきゃくさんは？
まさみ:	わたしは おみそしるを ひとつと おちゃを おねがいします。きょうの おすすめは なんですか。
Sushi chef:	そうですね。 きょうは あまえびが おいしいです。
まさみ:	じゃあ、それを ひとつ、ください。
Jon:	あと、えだまめも ください。
まさみ:	わたしも えだまめが ほしいです。 おさらを にまい、おねがいします。
Sushi chef:	はい、わかりました！



New words and expressions in the dialogue

Progressive	Kanji	English
いらっしゃい	いらっしゃい	welcome (rough form of いらっしゃいませ)
いくら	いくら	salmon eggs
はまち	ハマチ	yellow tail fish
おきゃくさん	お客さん	customer
おすすめ	お薦め	recommendation
あまえび	あまえび	sweet shrimp
えだまめ	枝豆	green soybeans
そちら	そちら	polite version of そっち (there)

❑ Short dialogue activities

1. Practice reading the dialogue in pairs.
2. Practice ordering things at a sushi bar.

11 Drill ドリル

Translate the following sentences. If you're not sure what they mean, we recommended that you review the lesson up to this point before continuing.

1. Ko–ra を さんぼん ください。
2. りんごを じゅっこ おねがいします。
3. かみを ごまい ください。
4. いくつ ほしいですか。
5. あと ここのつ ください。

11 Sentence Building ぶんのつくり

In each lesson we will build on a previous sentence. Watch it grow and transform each time new concepts are introduced.

Sando を よっつ ください。
Four sandwiches, please.

Compare how the sentence has changed from the prior lesson:

Lesson 10: Sando をください。
A sandwich, please.

Vocabulary Groups

O at school

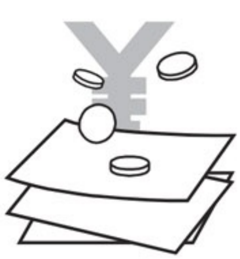
Progressive	Kanji	English
せんせい	先生	teacher
ほん	本	book
じしょ	辞書	dictionary
おてあらい	お手洗い	restroom
えんぴつ	鉛筆	pencil
おんがく	音楽	music

P at the office, etc.

Progressive	Kanji	English
けいたいでんわ	携帯電話	cellular phone
おかね	お金	money
ko–hi–	コーヒー	coffee
たばこ	たばこ	cigarettes
めがね	めがね	glasses
pasokon	パソコン	PC (computer)
no–to pasokon	ノートパソコン	laptop computer
めいし	名刺	business card

Q insects

Progressive	Kanji	English
ごきぶり	ごきびり	cockroach
あり	蟻	ant
はえ	蝿	house fly


おかね



コーヒー


パソコン

Lesson
12
Level ①

Japanese Verbs

Polite verb conjugation



Welcome to Japanese verbs. This is where Japanese becomes really fun! We will start out slowly with just four verbs and four forms. Learn them well and you should have no problem grasping the verb forms that follow.

12 About This Lesson このレッスンについて

Before The Lesson

1. Be able to write and read all ひらがな.
2. Review vocabulary group O, P and Q.

Lesson Goals

1. Learn how to conjugate verbs into the polite forms.
2. Learn how to use the particle に.

From The Teachers

1. The dictionary form of a verb is the most important form. Put effort into memorizing them and all other verb forms that come up in other lessons.

12 New Words あたらしい ことば

Progressive	Kana	Kanji	English
なにご	なにご	何語	what language?
なにじん	なにじん	何人	what nationality?
rosanzerusu	ロサンゼルス	ロサンゼルス	Los Angeles
rasu begasu	ラスベガス	ラスベガス	Las Vegas
shikago	シカゴ	シカゴ	Chicago
kariforunia	カリフォルニア	カリフォルニア	California
kanada	カナダ	カナダ	Canada
かんこく	かんこく	韓国	Korea

ちゅうごく	ちゅうごく	中国	China
ぎんこう	ぎんこう	銀行	bank
ふく	ふく	服	clothing, clothes
~し	~し	~市	~ City
~しゅう	~しゅう	~州	~ State
~けん	~けん	~県	~ Prefecture
~ご	~ご	~語	~ language
~じん	~じん	~人	~ nationality

12 New Phrases あたらしい かいわ

1. おひさしぶりです。 — It has been a long time.
2. なにごが はなせますか。 — What languages can you speak?
3. _________が はなせます。 — I can speak ____________.

12 Grammar ぶんぽう

❑ Polite versus informal speaking

In Japanese, it is common to use polite language with people you don't know, or who have higher social status than yourself. For example, when speaking to a stranger on the street or to your boss, you should use polite verb forms.

However, if you are talking to your family, friends, or people that are of lower or equal status than you, speaking informally will be more natural. Until your Japanese level becomes more advanced, we suggest that you stick to polite Japanese in order to form good speaking habits.

❑ Conjugating verbs into the polite form

The "dictionary form" of a verb is the only version that is in the dictionary. It is the most basic form of the verb without any conjugation. From this form of the verb, you can conjugate the verbs into many other forms using simple patterns. Let’s look at the four verbs we will learn in this lesson:

Dictionary Form	English Verb	Verb Type
いく	to go	regular
くる	to come	irregular
かえる	to return, go back, go home, come back, come home etc.	regular
わかる	to understand, know	regular

To conjugate the dictionary forms into other forms, the hiragana chart will be useful. This is a shortened chart – not all the hiragana are listed.

ら ra	ま ma	ば ba	な na	た ta	さ sa	が ga	か ka	あ a	**あ form**
り ri	み mi	び bi	に ni	ち chi	し shi	ぎ gi	き ki	い i	**い form**
る ru	む mu	ぶ bu	ぬ nu	つ tsu	す su	ぐ gu	く ku	う u	**う form**
れ re	め me	べ be	ね ne	て te	せ se	げ ge	け ke	え e	**え form**
ろ ro	も mo	ぼ bo	の no	と to	そ so	ご go	こ ko	お o	**お form**

The forms

Notice how the rows on the chart above have been labeled あ, い, う, え, お form. You may have noticed that every new verb in this lesson ends with a hiragana in the う form. This isn't just a coincidence - because *all verbs* in the Japanese language in the dictionary form end with う form hiragana.

For example, the verb いく (to go) ends in く. くる(to come) , わかる(to understand), and かえる(to return) all end in る. Both く and る are う form hiragana.

Verb types

Each verb in this lesson has been labeled as regular or irregular. The majority of Japanese verbs are regular verbs. We call them “regular” because there are so many of them and they all follow the exact same conjugation pattern.

Generally, irregular verbs do not follow any logical rule. The patterns of irregular verbs must be memorized. Luckily there are only a small amount of irregular verbs.

Making the conversion

To make the polite versions of regular verbs, the *final* hiragana of the dictionary form needs to be changed into the い form.

Step 1: Convert the last hiragana into the い form.

わか(る) → わか(り)

かえ(る) → かえ(り)

い(く) ——→ い(き)

Look back at the hiragana chart at the beginning of this lesson. See the る?
Move straight up the column to the り. The first step of conjugating regular verbs into their polite forms is to switch their final hiragana into the い form.

Remember that this pattern will NOT work for irregular verbs such as くる(to come), but only for regular verbs.

In "Japanese From Zero!" Book 2 you will learn how to use the hiragana chart to make more verb conjugations.

After changing the dictionary form into the い form, all you need to do is add one of the following endings to complete the verb:

Polite verb endings			
Present / Future Positive	Present / Future Negative	Past Positive	Past Negative
~ます will~, do~, am going to~	~ません won't~, don't~	~ました did~	~ません でした didn't~

Step 2: Add a stem.

わかり +
かえり +
いき +

} ます / ません / ました / ませんでした

Now let's conjugate each of the regular verbs in this lesson.

わかります	do understand
わかりません	do not understand, will not understand
わかりました	understood, did understand
わかりませんでした	didn't understand
いきます	will go, do go
いきません	won't go, don't go
いきました	went
いきませんでした	didn't go
かえります	will return, do return
かえりません	will not return, do not return
かえりました	returned
かえりませんでした	didn't return

The only verb in this lesson that isn't regular is くる (come). Remember: irregular verbs don't follow the chart we showed you earlier - their patterns have to be memorized.

くる is conjugated as follows:

きます	will come, do come
きません	won't come, don't come
きました	came
きませんでした	didn't come

❑ Location particles に and へ

Now that we have verbs to get you moving, where are you going? That's what location particles are for.

に and へ (although written as へ, it's pronounced as え) are both location and destination particles. They are placed after locations. In English, に and へ can both mean "to."

There are differences where に and へ are used. に is used when going to an exact location, as in, "I am going to France" (Furansu に いきます). The particle へ is used when going in a general direction, as in "I am going to the south" (みなみへ いきます).

In modern Japan most Japanese people freely mix に and へ without regard to grammatical rules. It would not be wrong to say Furansu へ いきます. The key point to remember is that locations require a location marker. In order to prevent confusion, from this point on we will use に as the standard location and destination marker.

に as a location marker

Examples

とうきょうに	to Tokyo
がっこうに	to school
ぎんこうに	to the bank
にほんに	to Japan

Now let's combine locations with the verbs.

Example Sentences

1. とうきょうに いきます。	I am going to Tokyo.
2. ぎんこうに いきました。	I went to the bank.
3. がっこうに いきませんでした。	I didn't go to school.
4. おおさかに いきません。	I am not going to Osaka.

❑ Time particle に

に is also used to mark time in a sentence. When used with time it can mean "in", "on", or "at".

に as a time marker

Examples

いちがつに	in January
かようびに	on Tuesday
ろくじに	at six o'clock

Now let's combine times with the verbs.

Example Sentences

1. いちがつに いきます。	I am going in January.
2. かようびに いきました。	I went on Tuesday.

❑ Time particle usage with きょう、せんしゅう、らいねん etc.

You do not need to add a time particle to words like きょう(today)、あした(tomorrow) etc. These words are not "specific times" like "Monday" or "January". Adding に after them would be as strange as saying "I am going ON tomorrow" or "I didn't go ON yesterday".

This rule is the same for words such as “this week”, “next month”, “last year”, etc.
An easy way to remember this rule is: "If you don't use IN, ON, or AT in English, then don't use に in Japanese." Look at the following examples:

Example Sentences

1. らいしゅう いきます。	I am going next week.
2. きのう いきました。	I went yesterday.
3. きょねん いきませんでした。	I didn't go last year.
4. こんしゅう いきません。	I am not going this week.

❑ Sentence structure using verbs

Verbs always come last in Japanese sentences. And just like か is added to です to make a question, you can add か after the conjugated verb to make a question. In the following examples we will use time, location, and question words.

Example Q&A

1. **どこに いきますか。**
   Where are you going (to)?

   にほんに いきます。
   I am going to Japan.

2. **いえに かえりましたか。**
   Did you return home?

   いいえ、ともだちのいえに いきました。
   No, I went to a friend's house.

3. **いつ きますか。**
   When are you coming?
   さんがつに いきます。
   I will go in March.

4. **なんにちに いきますか。**
   What day of the month are you going?

   ふつかに いきます。
   I am going on the 2nd.

5. **いつ にほんに いきますか。**
   When are you going to Japan?

   らいねんの いちがつに いきます。
   I am going next January.

6. **きのう、がっこうに いきましたか。**
   Did you go to school yesterday?

   いいえ、いきませんでした。でも、あした いきます。
   No, I didn't go. But I will go tomorrow.

Using the verb わかる

When using わかる to say that you understand something, you must use が to mark the thing that you understand.

Example Sentences

1. にほんごが わかります。 I understand Japanese.
2. にほんごが わかりません。 I don't understand Japanese.
3. かれは えいごが わかりません。 He doesn't understand English.

Languages and nationalities

By adding ご (language) and じん (people) after a country name, you can create languages and nationalities. For example, Spain in Japanese is "supein". To say "Spanish language," you say supein ご. Russia in Japanese is "roshia". To say someone is Russian, you say roshia じん.

English	Country	People	Language
Japan	にほん	にほんじん	にほんご
Korea	かんこく	かんこくじん	かんこくご
China	ちゅうごく	ちゅうごくじん	ちゅうごくご
Spain	supein	supein じん	supein ご

Note: This works for many countries but not all.

English	Country	People	Language
America	amerika	amerika じん	えいご
Phillipines	firipin	firipin じん	tagaragu ご
Mexico	mekishiko	mekishiko じん	supein ご

Example Sentences

1. Furansu ごが わかりますか。 Do you understand French?
2. Jon さんは kanada じん です。 Jon is Canadian.
3. ようこさんは supein ごが はなせます。 Youko can speak Spanish.

12 Q&A しつもんと こたえ E→J

1. **When are you coming back?** **いつ かえりますか。**
   I will return in May. 5がつに かえります。
   I will return on the 22nd. 22にちに かえります。
   I will return next week. らいしゅう かえります。

2. **Are you going?** **いきますか。**
Yes, I am going. はい、いきます。
No, I am not going. いいえ、いきません。

3. **Where are you going?** **どこに いきますか。**
I am going to Miyazaki City. みやざきしに いきます。
I am going to a friend's house. ともだちの いえに いきます。
I am going to the Hyougo Prefecture. ひょうごけんに いきます。

4. **Are you going to Tokyo?** **とうきょうに いきますか。**
Yes, I am going to Tokyo. はい、とうきょうに いきます。
No, I am not going to Tokyo. いいえ、とうきょうに いきません。

5. **Are you coming to the party?** **Pa–ti–に きますか。**
Yes, I am going. はい、いきます。
No, I am not going. いいえ、いきません。

6. **Did you go to Japan?** **にほんに いきましたか。**
Yes, I went to Japan. はい、にほんに いきました。
No, I didn't go to Japan. いいえ、にほんに いきませんでした。

7. **When are you coming back?** **いつ かえりますか。**
I will return tomorrow. あした かえります。
I will return on Sunday. にちようびに かえります。

8. **Will you come (over) tomorrow?** **あした、きますか。**
Yes, I will go. はい、いきます。
No, I won't go. いいえ、いきません。
No, I will go the day after tomorrow. いいえ、あさって いきます。

9. **When did you return to Canada?** **いつ kanada に かえりましたか。**
I didn't return. かえりませんでした。
I came back on Wednesday. すいようびに かえりました。

10. **What nationality are you?** **なにじん ですか。**
I am Mexican. Mekishiko じん です。
I am Korean. かんこくじん です。
I am Chinese. ちゅうごくじん です。
I am American. Amerika じん です。

12 Q&A しつもんと こたえ J→E

1. **ふるたさんは ちゅうごくごが わかりますか？**
   Does Mr. Furuta understand Chinese?

   いいえ。でも、かんこくごが わかります。
   No. But he understands Korean.

2. **なにごが はなせますか。**
   What languages do you speak?

   Supein ごと えいごが はなせます。
   I can speak Spanish and English.

   ちゅうごくごと かんこくごと にほんごが はなせます。
   I can speak Chinese and Korean and Japanese.

12 Mini Conversations ミニ かいわ J→E

1. Conversation between friends

A: どこに いきますか。
B: おじいさんの いえに いきます。
A: おじいさんの いえは どこですか。
B: Rasu begasu です。

A: Where are you going?
B: I am going to my grandfather's house.
A: Where is your grandfather's house?
B: Las Vegas.

2. Conversation on the phone between friends

A: いつ amerika に かえりますか。
B: すいようびに かえります。
A: あなたの おかあさんも かえりますか。
B: はい、おかあさんも かえります。

A: When will you come back to America?
B: I'll return on Wednesday.
A: Will your mother also come back?
B: Yes, my mother will also return.

3. Conversation between friends who haven't met in a while

A: おひさしぶりです。
B: いつ かえりましたか。
A: おととい かえりました。

A: It's been a long time.
B: When did you return?
A: I came back the day before yesterday.

4. Conversation between friends

A: だれが pa–ti–に きますか。
B: よしこさんと けいこさんが きます。
A: よしこさんと けいこさんは だれですか。
B: わたしの ともだちです。

A: Who is coming to the party?
B: Yoshiko and Keiko are coming.
A: Who are Yoshiko and Keiko?
B: They're my friends.

5. Conversation between two co-workers

A: いつ amerika に いきましたか。
B: Amerika に いきませんでした。
A: じゃ、どこに いきましたか。
B: かんこくに いきました。

A: When did you go to America?
B: I didn't go to America.
A: Well then, where did you go?
B: I went to Korea.

6. Conversation at work

A: なにごが はなせますか。
B: ちゅうごくごと えいごと にほんごが はなせます。
A: すごいですね。なにじんですか。
B: にほんじんです。

A: What languages can you speak?
B: I can speak Chinese, English, and Japanese.
A: That's amazing. What nationality are you?
B: I'm Japanese.

12 Reading Comprehension どっかい

Read the sentences below. Use the information to answer the reading comprehension questions later in this lesson.

① ここは amerika の shikago し です。
② まりさんは じゅうがつ みっかに にほんに いきました。
③ きのう shikago しに かえりました。
④ まりさんと ともだちの よしこさんは あした pa–ti–に いきます。
⑤ まりさんの ふくは しろです。
⑥ よしこさんのは orenji です。
⑦ あしたは harowi–n (Halloween) です。
⑧ まりさんは pa–ti–が だいすき です。
⑨ くがつに よしこさんの おとうさんの たんじょうび pa–ti–に いきました。
⑩ らいねんの しちがつ とおかに かんこくに いきます。



12 Lesson Activities

❑ Grammar drill

Fill in the blanks with appropriate verb forms.

Dictionary Form	Polite Forms			
	Present / Future		Past	
	positive	negative	positive	negative
いく	いきます			
くる		きません		
かえる			かえりました	
わかる				わかりませんでした

❑ Substitution drill

Replace the underlined word with the words provided.

Ex. あした <u>**kanada**</u>に いきます。
→ Japan　　あした にほんに いきます。

1. きょう <u>ぎんこう</u>に いきません。

→ school ____________________

→ McDonald's ____________________

→ friend's house ____________________

2. たなかさんは、<u>おととい</u> とうきょうに かえりました。

→ yesterday ____________________

→ last Friday ____________________

→ 5th of last month ____________________

3. やまもとさんは、にほんに かえりませんでした。

→ America ______

→ Los Angeles ______

→ Chicago ______

4. やまださんは、さんがつに ここに きます。

→ 2nd of next month ______

→ next Saturday ______

→ May of next year ______

5. おかあさんの いえに いきます。

→ won't go ______

→ went ______

→ didn't go ______

6. たむらさんの おとうさんは、にほんごが わかります。

→ English ______

→ computer ______

→ hiragana and katakana ______

❑ Reading comprehension questions

Answer the following questions about the reading comprehension in this lesson.

1. まりさんは きのう どこに かえりましたか。

___

2. まりさんの ともだちの なまえは なんですか。

___

3. きょうは なんがつ なんにち ですか。

___

4. まりさんは くがつに どこに いきましたか。

___

5. まりさんは らいねん どこに いきますか。

___

6. ここは どこですか。

___

7. まりさんは はちがつに どこに いきましたか。

___

❑ Short dialogue

Mr. Tanaka sees Ms. Smith (Sumisu) on the street and they start a conversation.

Sumisu さん: たなかさん、こんにちは。

たなかさん: Sumisu さん、こんにちは。 きょうは あついですね。

Sumisu さん: はい、あついです。

たなかさん: どこに いきますか。

Sumisu さん: いまから ①がっこうに いきます。

たなかさん: ②なんの がっこう ですか。

Sumisu さん: ③にほんごがっこう です。

たなかさん: そうですか。 わたしは いまから ④しごとに いきます。

New words and expressions in the dialogue

Progressive	Kanji+	English
いまから	今から	from now / from now on
なんの？	何の？	What? Which? What kind of?
きょうは あついですね。	今日は暑いですね。	Today sure is hot.

❑ Short dialogue activities

Practice reading the above dialogue in pairs.
Substitute ①-④ with the following words and try the conversation again.

A) ① Movies (えいが)
② What movie is it?
③ Any movie
④ I'm going to the bank



B) ① Party
② What (kind of) party is it?
③ school party
④ I'm going home

C) ① McDonald's
② Where is it?
③ It's over there
④ I'm going to school

❑ Japanese translation

Translate the following conversation into Japanese.

1.	
Ryouhei:	I am going to China.
Nobuko:	I went last year. When are you going?
Ryouhei:	On the 20th of next month.
Nobuko:	When will you return?
Ryouhei:	Maybe on the 30th.
Nobuko:	That's nice.
Ryouhei:	
Nobuko:	
Ryouhei:	
Nobuko:	
Ryouhei:	
Nobuko:	

12 Drill ドリル

Translate the following sentences. If you're not sure what they mean, we recommended that you review the lesson up to this point before continuing.

1. どこに いきますか。
2. いつ かえりますか。
3. きんようびに いきました。
4. にほんごが わかりますか。
5. なんがつに いきますか。

12 Sentence Building ぶんのつくり

In this lesson we are starting a new sentence to build on. Watch it grow and transform as new concepts are introduced.

あした にほんに いきます。
Tomorrow, I am going to Japan.

Lesson
13
Level ①

Telling Time

Hours and minutes



13 About This Lesson このレッスンについて

Before The Lesson

1. Review all of the vocabulary groups.
2. Know how to conjugate verbs into the polite forms.

Lesson Goals

1. Learn how to tell time in Japanese.
2. Learn how to use から(from) and まで(until).

From The Teachers

1. から(from) and まで(until) are used for both time and location and are very handy particles. Make sure you take the time to learn how they are used.
2. Review everything you have learned in this book. It sets the stage for Level 2. Good Luck!

13 New Words あたらしい ことば

Progressive	Kana	Kanji	English
なんじ	なんじ	何時	what time?
はん	はん	半	half past (:30)
ごぜん	ごぜん	午前	AM (also means morning)
ごご	ごご	午後	PM (also means afternoon)
くうこう	くうこう	空港	airport
じゅぎょう	じゅぎょう	授業	class
arubaito	アルバイト	アルバイト	part-time job
やすみ	やすみ	休み	day off, break

13 Time じかん

o'clock - じ					
one o'clock	いちじ	一時	seven o'clock	しちじ	七時
two o'clock	にじ	二時	eight o'clock	はちじ	八時
three o'clock	さんじ	三時	nine o'clock	くじ	九時
four o'clock	よじ	四時	ten o'clock	じゅうじ	十時
five o'clock	ごじ	五時	eleven o'clock	じゅういちじ	十一時
six o'clock	ろくじ	六時	twelve o'clock	じゅうにじ	十二時


さんじ


しちじ


よじ


じゅういちじ


くじ

minutes - ふん, ぷん		
1 minute	いっぷん	一分
2 minutes	にふん	二分
3 minutes	さんぷん	三分
4 minutes	よんぷん	四分
5 minutes	ごふん	五分
6 minutes	ろっぷん	六分
7 minutes	ななふん	七分
8 minutes	はっぷん / はちふん	八分
9 minutes	きゅうふん	九分
10 minutes	じゅっぷん / じっぷん	十分
11 minutes	じゅういっぷん	十一分
12 minutes	じゅうにふん	十二分
13 minutes	じゅうさんぷん	十三分
14 minutes	じゅうよんぷん	十四分
15 minutes	じゅうごふん	十五分
16 minutes	じゅうろっぷん	十六分

17 minutes	じゅうななふん	十七分
18 minutes	じゅうはっぷん / じゅうはちふん	十八分
19 minutes	じゅうきゅうふん	十九分
20 minutes	にじゅっぷん / にじっぷん	二十分
25 minutes	にじゅうごふん	二十五分
30 minutes	さんじゅっぷん / さんじっぷん	三十分
35 minutes	さんじゅうごふん	三十五分
40 minutes	よんじゅっぷん / よんじっぷん	四十分
45 minutes	よんじゅうごふん	四十五分
50 minutes	ごじゅっぷん / ごじっぷん	五十分
55 minutes	ごじゅうごふん	五十五分
60 minutes	ろくじゅっぷん / ろくじっぷん	六十分



しちじ
よんぷん



じゅうじ
はっぷん



くじ
じゅういっぷん



よじ
よんじゅっぷん



しちじ
にじゅうごふん

13 Grammar ぶんぽう

❑ AM and PM

ごぜん means both morning and AM ごご means both afternoon and PM. They are always placed in front of the time.

Examples

1. ごぜん ごじ — 5:00 AM
2. ごぜん じゅうにじ じゅっぷん — 12:10 AM
3. ごご ろくじ — 6:00 PM
4. ごご しちじ いっぷん — 7:01 PM
5. ごご いちじ よんじゅうごふん — 1:45 PM

❑ Half past

はん means half past. It always comes after the hour.

Examples

1. じゅうじ はん	10:30
2. さんじ はん	3:30
3. にじ はん	2:30

Example sentences

1. にじはんに いきます。	I am going at 2:30.
2. しちはんに かえります。	I will return at 7:30.
3. ともだちは じゅうじはんに きました。	My friend came at 10:30.

❑ Using the particle から

から means "from" or "since," depending on the context. It comes after a time or location to say "from this time" or "from this location". It is used much like its English equivalent.

から with time

Examples

1. なんじ から	from what time?
2. はちがつ から	from August
3. いつ から	from when?
4. さんじはん から	from 3:30
5. げつようびから	from Monday

から with location

Examples

1. どこ から	from where
2. あそこ から	from that place over there
3. にほん から	from Japan
4. しごと から	from work
5. ともだちのいえから	from a friend's house

Example Q&A

1. **なんじから いきますか。**	**From what time will you go?**
ごじから いきます。	I will go from five o'clock.
2. **しごとは なんじから ですか。**	**From what time is your work?**
しちじはんから です。	It's from 7:30.
3. **どこから きましたか。**	**Where did you come from?**
あおもりけんから きました。	I came from Aomori Prefecture.
みやざきしから きました。	I came from Miyazaki City.
4. **いつ にほんから かえりますか。**	**When will you return from Japan?**
あした かえります。	I will return tomorrow.
5. **なつは きょうからですか。**	**Is summer from today?**
	(Does summer start today?)
いいえ、あさってからです。	No, it is from the day after tomorrow.

❑ Using the particle まで

まで means "until", "up until", or "as far as". It comes after a time or location to say "until this time" or "until this location". When まで is used with location, the location is the final destination. It can also mean "up until to" or just "to". Remember that まで and に are different. In most cases, に can be thought of as a single destination marker and まで can be thought of as a final destination marker.

まで with time

Examples

1. なんじ まで	until what time?
2. いつ まで	until when?
3. さんじ まで	until three o'clock
4. いちがつ まで	until January
5. きょう まで	until today

まで with location

Examples

1. とうきょう まで	until Tokyo
2. どこ まで	until where
3. しごと まで	until work

Example Q&A

1. どこまで いきますか。 ほっかいどうまで いきます。	Up until where (how far) are you going? I am going to (as far as) Hokkaido.
2. しごとは なんじまで ですか。 しちじはんまで です。	Until what time is your work? It's until 7:30.
3. どこまで いきましたか。 あおもりけんまで いきました。	Up until where (how far) did you go? I went to (as far as) Aomori Prefecture.
4. がっこうは なんじまで ですか。 さんじはんまで です。	Until what time is school? It's until 3:30.

13 Mini Conversations ミニ かいわ J→E

1. Conversation between co-workers

A: しごとは なんじから なんじまで ですか。
B: ごぜん はちじから ごご ごじまで です。
A: いつ かえりますか。
B: ごじはんに かえります。

A: From what time until what time is your work?
B: It's from 8 AM until 5 PM.
A: When will you return home?
B: I will return at 5:30.

2. Conversation between friends

A: ふゆは いつから いつまで ですか。
B: ふゆは じゅうがつから にがつまで です。
A: ちがいます。
B: ごめんなさい。ふゆは じゅうにがつから さんがつまで です。

A: From when until when is winter?
B: Winter is from November until February.
A: That's wrong.
B: Sorry. Winter is from December until March.

3. Conversation between friends

A: きょう、どこから どこまで いきますか。
B: なごやしから ひめじしまで いきます。
A: でんしゃは なんじですか。
B: じゅういちじ よんじゅうさんぷん です。

A: From where to where are you going today?
B: I will go from Nagoya City to Himeji City.
A: What time is the train?
B: It's at 11:43.

4. Conversation between brothers

A: おかあさんは いつ きますか。
B: らいしゅうの どようびに きます。
A: なんじに?
B: ごぜん しちじに。

A: When will mother come?
B: She will come next Saturday.
A: At what time?
B: At 7 AM.

5. Conversation between friends

A: Pa–ti–は なんじからなんじまで ですか。
B: ごご ろくじから ごぜん いちじまで です。
A: わかりました。 ありがとう。

A: From what time until what time is the party?
B: It's from 6 PM until 1 AM.
A: Okay. Thanks.

6. Conversation between friends

A: なんじの ひこうき ですか。
B: ひこうきは ごごはちじ じゅうななふん です。
A: くうこうに なんじに いきますか。
B: ろくじはんに いきます。

A: What time is your flight? (ひこうき can mean "flight" and "plane")
B: The plane (my flight) is 8:17 PM.
A: What time are you going to the airport?
B: I'm going at 6:30.

7. Conversation between neighbors

A: Kurisumasu の pa–ti–は いつですか。
B: らいしゅうの どようびの しちじからです。
A: なんじまでですか。
B: たぶん じゅうにじまで です。

A: When is the Christmas party?
B: It starts at seven o'clock next Saturday.
A: What time does it end?
B: Maybe until twelve o'clock.

13 Q&A しつもんと こたえ E→J

1. **What time is it?**	**なんじ ですか。**
It is two o'clock.	にじ です。
It is 6:12.	ろくじ じゅうにふん です。
2. **What time was it?**	**なんじ でしたか。**
It was twelve o'clock.	じゅうにじ でした。
It was three o'clock.	さんじ でした。
It was four o'clock.	よじ でした。
3. **From what time is your work?**	**あなたの しごとは なんじから ですか。**
My work is from eight o'clock.	わたしの しごとは はちじから です。
My work is from seven o'clock.	わたしの しごとは しちじから です。
4. **What time are you going?**	**なんじに いきますか。**
I'm going at three o'clock.	さんじに いきます。
I'm not going.	いきません。
5. **What time will you go back?**	**なんじに かえりますか。**
I will go back at 6:30.	ろくじはんに かえります。
I'm not going back.	かえりません。
6. **What time did you come here?**	**ここに なんじに きましたか。**
I came at 4:15.	よじ じゅうごふんに きました。
I came yesterday.	きのう きました。
7. **Until when is your break?**	**やすみは いつまで ですか。**

My break until August. やすみは はちがつまで です。
It's until next week. らいしゅうまで です。

8. **Since when have you liked Japanese?** **いつから にほんごが すき でしたか。**
I have liked it since I was fifteen years old. じゅうごさいから すきでした。
I have liked it since last year. きょねんから すきでした。

13 Reading Comprehension どっかい

Read the sentences below. Use the information to answer the reading comprehension questions later in this lesson.

① ここは にほんごの がっこうです。
② ここに Samu (Sam) さんは ごぜん じゅうじに きました。
③ Jon さんは じゅうじ じゅうごふんに きました。
④ きょうの じゅぎょうは じゅうじはんから ごご いちじまで です。
⑤ Samu さんは にじに いえに かえります。
⑥ ごご よじに しごとに いきます。
⑦ Samu さんの しごとは よじはんから ごぜん いちじはんまで です。
⑧ Samu さんの しごとは hoteru の しごとです。
⑨ Jon さんは にじはんに supein ごの がっこうに いきます。
⑩ Supein ごの がっこうは さんじまで です。
⑪ いえに ろくじに かえります。
⑫ ごご はちじから arubaito です。
⑬ しちじ ごじゅうごふんに いきます。
⑭ Arubaito は じゅうにじまで です。
⑮ Jon さんの arubaito は makudonarudo です。

13 Lesson Activities

❑ Drill

Write the time shown on each clock in Japanese.





1. ____________________ 2. ____________________ 3. ____________________





4. ____________________ 5. ____________________ 6. ____________________





7. ____________________ 8. ____________________ 9. ____________________

❑ Question and answer

Answer the following questions as if they were being asked to you directly. Write all the answers in hiragana.

1. しごと / がっこうは なんじからですか。

____

2. なんじに しごと / がっこうに いきますか。

3. なんようびに しごと / がっこうに いきますか。

4. なんじに いえに かえりますか。

5. いま、なんじですか。

6. にほんごの じゅぎょうは なんじから なんじまで ですか。

7. あなたの にほんごのせんせいは だれですか。

8. ふゆは なんがつから なんがつまで ですか。(December to February)

9. なつは なんがつから なんがつまで ですか。(June to September)

❑ Reading comprehension questions

Answer the following questions about the reading comprehension in this lesson. Write all the answers in hiragana (except for the katakana words).

1. ここは どこですか。

2. だれが にほんごの がっこうに じゅうじに きましたか。

____

3. きょうの じゅぎょうは いつですか。

____

4. Samu さんの しごとは なんじから なんじまでですか。

____

5. Samu さんは いえに なんじに かえりましたか。

____

6. Jon さんの arubaito は なんじから なんじまで ですか。

____

7. Jon さんは なんじに にほんごのがっこうに きましたか。

____

8. Jon さんは にじはんに どこに いきますか。

____

❑ Japanese translation

Translate the following conversations into English.

1.
Aさん: いつから しごとですか。 Bさん: にがつ ようかから です。 Aさん: しごとは なんじから なんじまで ですか。 Bさん: ごぜん はちじから ごご よじまで です。

2.
Aさん: いま なんじ ですか。 Bさん: よじ にじゅっぷん です。 Aさん: よじはんに いえに かえります。 Bさん: いえは どこ ですか。 Aさん: あそこ です。

3.
Aさん: あしたから にほんに かえります。 Bさん: いつまで ですか。 Aさん: はちがつ じゅうごにちまで です。 Bさん: そうですか。 いいですね。

❑ English translation

Translate the following conversations into Japanese.

1.
Mr. A: When did you come here? Ms. B: I came at nine. Mr. A: Where is your friend? Ms. B: My friend didn't come. Mr. A: Where is your friend now? Ms. B: He is at home now.

2.
Mrs. A: What time is your airplane? Mr. B: It's 10:30 a.m. Mrs. A: What time are you going to the airport? Mr. B: I'll go at 9:00. Mrs. A: Got it.

3.
Mr. A: From what time is your part time job? Mr. B: It's from 1:00 p.m. Mr. A: Do you like your part time job? Mr. B: No, I don't like it.

❑ Particle drill

Fill in the blanks with appropriate particles.

1. わたし ______ しごと ______ はちじ ______ ごじ ______です。
2. せんげつ ______ じゅうごにち ______ もくようびでした。
3. なんじ ______ いえ ______ かえります ______ ?
4. やまださん ______ くるま ______ しろ ______ gure– です。
5. いぬ ______ すきです。 でも、 ねこ ______ きらいです。
6. あたらしい じてんしゃ ______ ほしいです。
7. どれ ______ たなかさん ______ ほん です______ ?
8. かようび ______ とうきょう______ いきます。
9. Hanba–ga– ______ poteto ______ おねがいします。

   Ko–ra ___________ (also) おねがいします。

❑ Short dialogue

Mr. Hashimoto is talking to Mr. Watanabe about his plans for the weekend.

わたなべさん: はしもとさん、あしたも はちじから しごとですか。

はしもとさん: いいえ、あしたは やすみです。

わたなべさん: いいですね。あしたは どこに いきますか。

はしもとさん: あしたは おおさかに いきます。



わたなべさん: ひこうきですか。

はしもとさん: はい。くじの ひこうきです。 くうこうに はちじに いきます。

わたなべさん: そうですか。いつ かえりますか。

はしもとさん: らいしゅうの かようびに とうきょうに かえります。

❑ Short dialogue activities

1. Practice reading the dialogue in pairs.
2. Talk about your weekend plans.
   - Use the new verbs: ~に いきます / きます / かえります

13 Drill ドリル

Translate the following sentences. If you're not sure what they mean, we recommended that you review the lesson up to this point before continuing.

1. なんじに いきますか。
2. でんしゃは なんじですか。
3. がっこうは いちじから はちじまで です。
4. あなたの しごとは なんじから ですか。
5. ごぜん ろくじに くうこうに いきます。

13 Sentence Building ぶんのつくり

In each lesson we will build on a previous sentence. Watch it transform each time new concepts are introduced.

あした、ごご さんじに にほんに いきます。
Tomorrow I am going to Japan at 3 p.m.

Compare how the sentence has changed from the prior lesson:

Lesson 12: あした、ごご さんじに にほんに いきます。
Tomorrow I am going to Japan.

APPENDICES

Everyday Phrases

A Greetings あいさつ

1.	Good morning.	Ohayou gozaimasu. / Ohayou.
2.	Good afternoon.	Konnichiwa.
3.	Good evening.	Konbanwa.
4.	Good night.	Oyasuminasai. / Oyasumi.
5.	Goodbye.	Sayounara.
6.	Thank you.	Doumo arigatou. / Arigatou.
7.	Thank you very much.	Doumo arigatou gozaimasu.
8.	You are welcome.	Dou itashimashite.
9.	It's been a long time. / Long time no see.	Shibaraku deshita.
10.	It's been a long time. / Long time no see.	Ohisashiburi desu. (standard)
11.	It's been a long time. / Long time no see.	Gobusata shite orimasu. (formal)
12.	Happy Birthday.	Tanjoubi omedetou.
13.	Happy New Year.	Akemashite omedetou.
14.	Bye.	Bai bai.
15.	See you.	Jaa ne. / Jaa.
16.	See you again.	Jaa mata. / De wa mata.
17.	Farewell.	Sayounara.

B Self Introductions じこしょうかい

18.	Nice to meet you.	Hajimemashite.
19.	What is your name?	Onamae wa nan desu ka.
20.	I am Tanaka.	(polite and humble) Tanaka to moushimasu.
21.	I am Tanaka.	(simple but correct) Tanaka desu.
22.	Best regards.	Yoroshiku onegai shimasu.

There is not an exact translation, but this phrase is said when first meeting somebody, usually after stating your name. It is also used on many other occasions to mean, "I request of you," when one is requesting something of another.

23. Where did you come from?	Doko kara kimashita ka.
24. I came from _____.	________ kara kimashita.
25. Where do you live?	Doko ni sundeimasu ka.
26. I live in _____.	________ ni sundeimasu.
27. How old are you?	Nan-sai desu ka.
28. I am 25 years old.	Ni juu go sai desu.
29. How old do I look?	Nan-sai ni miemasu ka.
30. You look _____.	________ ni miemasu.

C Communication コミュニケーション

31. I am studying Japanese.	Nihongo o benkyou shiteimasu.
32. Do you understand?	Wakarimasu ka.
33. Yes, I understand.	Hai, wakarimasu.
34. No, I don't understand.	iie, wakarimasen.
35. Can you speak Japanese?	Nihongo ga hanasemasu ka.
36. Can you speak English?	Eigo ga hanasemasu ka.
37. A little.	Sukoshi.
38. Not at all.	Zenzen.
39. Please say it once again.	Mou ichido itte kudasai.
40. Please speak more slowly.	Motto yukkuri itte kudasai.
41. Please speak more clearly. (this can be rude)	Motto hakkiri itte kudasai.
42. Wait a moment, please.	Chotto matte kudasai.
43. Go ahead. / Please.	Douzo.
44. Excuse me.	Sumimasen.
45. I am sorry. / Please forgive me.	Gomen nasai.
46. What is it in Japanese?	Nihongo de nan desu ka.
47. What is it in English?	Eigo de nan desu ka.

D Shopping ショッピング

48. How much is it?	Ikura desu ka.
49. It's 400 yen.	Yon hyaku en desu.

50. It's 22 dollars. — Ni juu ni doru desu.

51. It's _________ dollars. — __________ doru desu.

52. It's _________ yen. — __________ en desu.

53. It's expensive. — Takai desu.

54. It's cheap. — Yasui desu.

E At a Restaurant / Eating レストランで

55. A menu, please. — Menyu– o kudasai.

56. Water, please. — Mizu o kudasai.

57. More, please. — Motto kudasai.

58. ________ please. — ________ o kudasai.

59. It's delicious. — Oishii desu.

60. It doesn't taste good. — Oishikunai desu.

61. I am hungry. — Onaka ga sukimashita.

62. I am thirsty. — Nodo ga kawakimashita.

63. I am full. — Onaka ga ippai desu.

64. I will receive. — Itadakimasu. (said just prior to eating)

65. It was a good meal. — Gochisou sama deshita.
    Said after a meal, normally when someone has cooked or paid for you.

F Entering and Exiting はいるとき、でるとき

66. I'm going and I will come back. — Ittekimasu.
    Always said by person who will be returning.

67. Go and be careful. — Itterasshai.
    Always said to the person who will be back from the place they are leaving.

68. I'm home. — Tadaima.

69. Welcome home. — Okaerinasai.

70. Sorry to disturb you. — Ojama shimasu.
    Said upon entering someone's house.

71. Sorry to have disturbed you. Said upon leaving someone's house.	Ojama shimashita.

G On the Phone でんわで

72. Hello.	Moshi moshi. (on the phone)
73. Is Mr. Honda there?	Honda san wa irasshaimasu ka.
74. Is ________ there?	________ san wa irasshaimasu ka.

H Commands / Requests

75. Please show me.	Misete kudasai.
76. Please guide me.	Annai shite kudasai.
77. Please eat it.	Tabete kudasai.
78. Please read it.	Yonde kudasai.
79. Please say it.	Itte kudasai.
80. Please write it.	Kaite kudasai.
81. Please look at it. / Please look.	Mite kudasai.
82. Please come.	Kite kudasai.
83. Please stop it.	Yamete kudasai.

Last Names

❑ Common Japanese surnames and their meaning

Some of these family names' meanings are easily understood, but others are mysteriously vague. You will notice that most of the names have meaning related to the natural world. The meanings of the names are determined by the kanji they are composed of.

Name	Hiragana	Kanji	Possible Meaning
Aoki	あおき	青木	blue (green) tree
Endou	えんどう	遠藤	far away wisteria
Fujita	ふじた	藤田	a field of wisteria
Hasegawa	はせがわ	長谷川	long valley river
Hashimoto	はしもと	橋本	main bridge
Hayashi	はやし	林	woods
Higashi	ひがし	東	east
Honda	ほんだ	本田	main rice paddy
Ikeda	いけだ	池田	pond rice paddy
Inoue	いのうえ	井上	above a well
Ishikawa	いしかわ	石川	stone river
Itou	いとう	伊藤	grand wisteria
Kawada	かわだ	川田	river rice paddy
Kawamoto	かわもと	川本	main river
Kimura	きむら	木村	tree village
Kobayashi	こばやし	小林	small woods
Matsumoto	まつもと	松本	main pine
Mikami	みかみ	三上	three above
Minami	みなみ	南	south
Mori	もり	森	forest
Nakajima	なかじま	中島	inner island
Nakamura	なかむら	中村	inner forest
Nakano	なかの	中野	inner field
Nishida	にしだ	西田	west rice paddy
Nishimura	にしむら	西村	west village
Ogawa	おがわ	小川	small river
Sasaki	ささき	佐々木	helping tree
Satou	さとう	佐藤	helping wisteria
Shimizu	しみず	清水	clear water
Suzuki	すずき	鈴木	bell tree
Takahashi	たかはし	高橋	tall bridge
Takenaka	たけなか	竹中	inside bamboo

Tamura	たむら	田村	rice paddy village
Tanaka	たなか	田中	inner rice paddy
Tashiro	たしろ	田代	substitute field
Uchida	うちだ	内田	inner field
Watanabe	わたなべ	渡辺	neighborhood crossing
Yamada	やまだ	山田	mountain rice paddy
Yamaguchi	やまぐち	山口	mountain exit
Yamamoto	やまもと	山本	main mountain
Yamashita	やました	山下	below mountian
Yamazaki	やまざき	山崎	mountain penisula
Yoshida	よしだ	吉田	good rice paddy

Girls' Given Names

❑ Common Japanese given names for girls

These are some common Japanese given names for girls. The meaning of each name depends on the kanji used. The possible kanji for each name is countless.

Name	Hiragana	Possible Kanji
Ai	あい	愛
Akemi	あけみ	明美
Akiko	あきこ	明子、秋子
Asami	あさみ	麻美
Asuka	あすか	飛鳥、明日香
Aya	あや	綾、彩、亜矢
Ayaka	あやか	綾香、亜矢香
Ayako	あやこ	綾子、亜矢子
Chikako	ちかこ	千賀子、千香子
Chiyoko	ちよこ	千代子、知世子
Erika	えりか	絵里か
Etsuko	えつこ	悦子、恵津子
Haruka	はるか	春香
Hideko	ひでこ	秀子、英子
Hiroko	ひろこ	弘子、広子
Hisako	ひさこ	久子、寿子、比沙子
Hitomi	ひとみ	瞳
Kaori	かおり	香、香里
Kazuko	かずこ	和子、員子
Keiko	けいこ	恵子、啓子
Kimiko	きみこ	君子、公子
Kiyoko	きよこ	清子、喜代子
Kumiko	くみこ	久美子、組子
Kyouko	きょうこ	京子、今日子
Maiko	まいこ	麻衣子、舞子
Manami	まなみ	真奈美、愛美
Marina	まりな	真里菜
Megumi	めぐみ	恵美
Michiko	みちこ	美智子、美知子
Mika	みか	美香
Miyoko	みよこ	美代子、三代子
Momoko	ももこ	桃子

Natsumi	なつみ	奈津美、夏美
Nobuko	のぶこ	信子、伸子
Nobuyo	のぶよ	信代
Nozomi	のぞみ	希
Reiko	れいこ	玲子、礼子
Rie	りえ	理恵、利恵
Rieko	りえこ	理恵子
Rina	りな	里奈
Risa	りさ	理沙
Sachiko	さちこ	幸子
Saori	さおり	沙織、佐緒里
Satoko	さとこ	聡子、智子
Satomi	さとみ	里美
Sayoko	さよこ	佐代子、沙代子
Sayuri	さゆり	小百合
Setsuko	せつこ	節子
Shizuka	しずか	静香
Shizuko	しずこ	静子
Tomoko	ともこ	智子、友子
Youko	ようこ	洋子、陽子
Yui	ゆい	唯、由比
Yuka	ゆか	由香、由佳
Yukari	ゆかり	由香里
Yuki	ゆき	由紀
Yumiko	ゆみこ	由美子
Yuuko	ゆうこ	裕子、優子

Boys' Given Names

❑ Common Japanese given names for boys

These are some common Japanese given names for boys. The meaning of each name depends on the kanji used. The possible kanji for each name is countless.

Name	Hiragana	Possible Kanji
Akira	あきら	明、
Daisuke	だいすけ	大輔、大介
Hidehiro	ひでひろ	英博、英裕
Hideki	ひでき	秀樹、英樹
Hideo	ひでお	秀雄
Hideto	ひでと	秀人、英人
Hideyuki	ひでゆき	秀行、英之
Isao	いさお	功、勲
Jouji	じょうじ	譲二、譲治
Ken	けん	健、賢
Kenichi	けんいち	健一、謙一
Kenji	けんじ	健二、憲次
Makoto	まこと	誠
Masaki	まさき	正樹、真崎
Masaru	まさる	勝
Masato	まさと	正人
Minoru	みのる	実、稔
Mitsuo	みつお	光男、光夫
Noboru	のぼる	昇、登
Osamu	おさむ	修
Ryo	りょ	力、緑
Ryouta	りょうた	良太、亮太
Satoshi	さとし	聡、覚
Shingo	しんご	信吾
Shougo	しょうご	省吾
Tadashi	ただし	忠志、正
Tatsuya	たつや	達也、達矢
Tomohide	ともひで	智英、友秀
Tsubasa	つばさ	翼
Tsutomu	つとむ	勉、務
Yoshiharu	よしはる	義春
Yoshihiro	よしひろ	義弘

Answer Key

❑ Pre-Lesson B: Number conversion

1. san juu yon
2. go juu kyuu
3. ni juu kyuu
4. nana juu hachi
5. hyaku ni juu
6. san byaku kyuu juu ni
7. go juu nana
8. san zen yon
9. sen ni hyaku san
10. nana hyaku hachi juu kyuu
11. kyuu juu kyuu
12. yon sen roppyaku nana juu go
13. kyuu hyaku san juu ni
14. hassen nana hyaku nana juu san

❑ Pre-Lesson B: Everyday numbers

1. (answer will vary)
2. (answer will vary)
3. (answer will vary)

❑ Pre-Lesson C: Japanese numbers

1. 75 years old
2. 48 years old
3. 82 years old
4. 107 years old
5. 34 years old
6. 16 years old
7. 51 years old
8. 20 years old
9. 800 years old
10. 1 year old

❑ Pre-Lesson C: Question and answer 1

1. How old are you? _____sai desu.
2. What is your name? _____desu / _____to moushimasu.

❑ Pre-Lesson C: Question and answer 2

How old do I look?
1-6. (answers will vary)

❑ Pre-Lesson D: Japanese translation

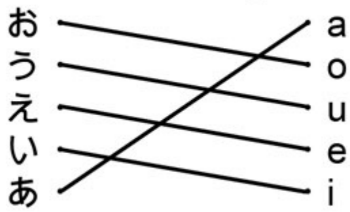
1. Mari: I will go and come back. / I'll be back.
   Mari's Mother: Have a good day. / Take care. / See you.

2. Kenji: I'm home. / I'm back.
   Kenji's Mother: Welcome back home.

❑ Lesson 1: Word practice

1. お ka あ san
2. いえ
3. お to う san
4. あ ka い
5. い mo う to
6. ka う
7. う sagi
8. え npitsu
9. お ne え san
10. お moshiro い
11. い su
12. お kiru

❑ Lesson 1: Hiragana matching



❑ Lesson 1: Question and answer

Question	Answer
1. What is it?	Haburashi desu.
2. Is it a towel?	いいえ、 makura desu.
3. What is it?	い nu desu.
4. Is it a nose?	いいえ、 kuchi desu.
5. Is she Ms. Tanaka?	いいえ、 Yamamoto san desu.
6. What is it?	Beddo desu.

❑ Lesson 1: Japanese translation

1. Tanaka san:	What is it? Is it a blanket?
Kobayashi san:	Please say it one more time.
Tanaka san:	Is it a blanket?
Kobayashi san:	No, it is a towel.

❑ Lesson 1: English translation

1. Kouichi:	(あ nata wa) Masumi san desu ka.
Masumi:	いいえ、Yasuko desu. (あ nata wa) Yuusuke san desu ka.
Kouichi:	いいえ、Kouichi desu.

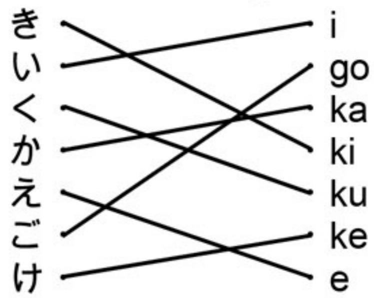
❑ Lesson 1: What would you say?

1. Mo う い chido い tte kudasa い.
2. Hajimemashite. _______to moushimasu. Yoroshiku お nega い shimasu.
3. Nansa い ni miemasu ka.
4. Nakamura san desu ka.
5. Motto yukkuri い tte kudasai.

❑ Lesson 2: Word Practice

1. きい ro
2. きく
3. か minari
4. くうぐ n
5. こけ
6. いく
7. け mushi
8. くうこう
9. ぎ n い ro
10. き n'ni く
11. ごご
12. こお ri

❑ Lesson 2: Hiragana matching



❑ Lesson 2: Question and answer 1

1. What is this?	(こ re wa) く ruma desu.
2. What is this?	(こ re wa) konpyu–ta– desu.
3. Is this a mirror?	いいえ、(こ re wa) mado desu.
4. Are these vegetables?	いいえ、(こ re wa) furu–tsu desu.

❑ Lesson 2: Question and answer 2

1. Which is a book?	(1st picture) Kore desu.
2. Which is a vegetable?	(middle picture: onion) Kore desu.
3. Which is a fruit?	(2nd picture: cherries) Kocchi desu.

❑ Lesson 2: Question and answer 3

1. Q: What is that over there? (あ re wa) nan desu か。	A: That's a dog. あ re wa い nu desu.
2. Q: What is this? こ re wa nan desu か。	A: That's a toothbrush (Sore wa) haburashi desu.
3. Q: Is that a pillow? Sore wa makura desu か。	A: No, this is a towel. いいえ, こ re wa taoru desu.
4. Q: What is that? Sore wa nan desu か。	A: This is a book. (こ re wa) hon desu.

❑ Lesson 2: Japanese translation

1. Satoko san:	Is that a book?
Shouta san:	No, it is a magazine.
Satoko san:	Please say it one more time. What is it?
Shouta san:	This is a magazine.

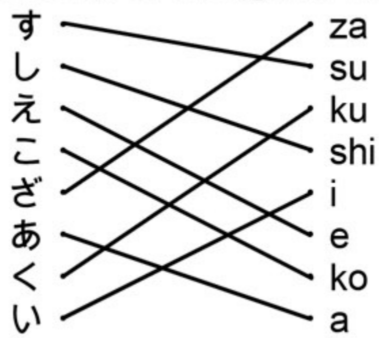
❑ Lesson 2: English translation

1. Japanese person:	(あ nata wa) nihon ご が hanasemasu か.
American person:	Su こ shi.
Japanese person:	あ re wa nan desu か.
American person:	Sore wa く ruma desu.
Japanese person:	あ ri が to う.

❑ Lesson 3: Word practice

1. mura さき
2. さす
3. し ro
4. そ tsugyo う
5. すし
6. じか n
7. さ ru
8. おじいさ n
9. あせ
10. あ n ぜ n
11. ぞう
12. げ n ざい

❑ Lesson 3: Hiragana matching



❑ Lesson 3: Question and answer 1

Question	Answer
1. Who is this?	Yo し da さ n de す.
2. Is this Jenny?	いいえ、Monika さ n de す.
3. Whose birds are these?	Ta かこ san no tori de す.
4. Whose mother is this?	Makoto（くん）no おかあさ n de す.

❑ Lesson 3: Question and answer 2 (sample answers)

Question	Answer
1. What's your name?	Yamada Yo しこ de す.
2. What's your grandmother's name?	Yamada Ma さ mi de す.
3. What's your mother's car?	Toyota de す.
4. How old is your grandpa?	Nanaju う ごさい de す.
5. How old is your dad?	ご ju う ni さい de す.

❑ Lesson 3: Japanese translation

1. Kobayashi san: Whose book is this?
   Nakaya san: I don't know, maybe it is Mr. Tanaka's book.

❑ Lesson 3: English translation

1. Terada san: Tana かさ n de すか。
   Yamada san: いいえ、Yamada de す. Tana か さ n wa dare de すか。
   Terada san: (Tana か さ n wa) こ baya しさ n no tomodachi de す。

❑ Lesson 3: Reading comprehension translation

① My name is Honda.
② I am 35 years old.
③ My girlfriend's name is Terada.
④ She is 29 years old.

❑ Lesson 3: Reading comprehension questions

Question	Answer
1. Is Honda's girlfriend's name Tanaka?	いいえ、Terada de す.*
2. Who is Terada?	Honda さ n no か nojo de す.
3 Is Terada Yamada's girlfriend?	いいえ、Honda san no か nojo de す. **OR** いいえ、chi がい ma す.
4. How old is Ms. Terada?	Niju う kyu う さい de す.

* (Note: **いいえ、Honda san no か nojo no name え wa** in front of the answer above would be unnaturally long. Try to keep the answers simple.)

❑ Lesson 3: What would you say?

1. さ yo う nara. (later you will learn itte き ma す)
2. お hayo う ござい ma す.
3. Wa か rima せ n.
4. あ ri が to う ござい ma す.

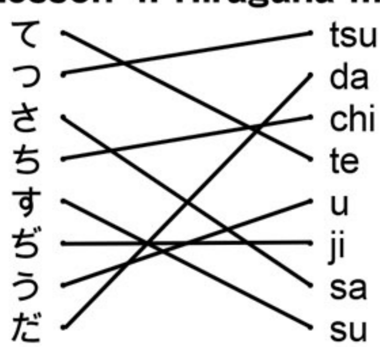
❑ Lesson 3: Short dialogue translation

Yoshida san:	Good afternoon, Ms. Ueki.
Ueki san:	Good afternoon, Mr. Yoshida. It's been a long time. Is your father doing well?
Yoshida san:	Yes he is fine. What is that?
Ueki san:	This is a camera. It's my hobby.
Yoshida san:	That's great!
Ueki san:	What is your (Yoshida san's) hobby?
Yoshida san:	My hobby is golf.

❑ Lesson 4: Word practice

1. wa たし
2. ただ
3. たつ
4. とつぜ n
5. ちぢ mu
6. てつだう
7. いたい
8. おとうさ n
9. hana ぢ
10. いきど mari
11. で nwa
12. とどく

❑ Lesson 4: Hiragana matching



❑ Lesson 4: Question and answer 1

Question	Answer
1. What is this in Japanese?	うさぎです。
2. What is this in Japanese?	うしです。
3. What is this in English?	「Panda」です。
4. What is this in English?	「Lion」です。

❑ Lesson 4: Question and answer 2

1. What color is your car?	_______です。
2. What color is your toothbrush?	[any color] です。
3. What color are pandas?	し ro と く ro です。
4. What color are bananas?	きい ro （い）です。
5. Are elephants grey?	Ha い、そうです。/ Ha い、gure– です。

❑ Lesson 4: What would you say?

1. ご menna さい. / す mima せ n.
2. ______さ n no い nu wa nani い ro ですか.
3. いいえ、 ちがい ma す. (Ha い, そうです. if you ARE Tanaka san)
4. ______wa, nihon ご で nan ですか.

❑ Lesson 4: Japanese translation

1. Takada san:	What color is (your) car?
Kadota san:	My car?
Takada san:	Yes.
Kadota san:	It's purple. How about your car?
Takada san:	My car is silver and gold.

❑ Lesson 4: Reading comprehension translation

① Junko is 25 years old.
② Her dad is 52 years old.
③ Her dad's name is Yoshihiro.
④ Junko's car and her dad's car are Hondas.
⑤ Dad's car is purple.
⑥ Junko's car is pink and blue.

❑ Lesson 4: Reading comprehension questions

Question	Answer
1. What color is Junko's car?	Pinku to あお de す。
2. Whose car is the Honda?	Jun こさ n to Jun こさ n no お to うさ n no く ruma de す。
4. Whose car is purple?	お to うさ n no く ruma de す。
5. How old is Junko?	Ni ju うごさい de す。
6. Who is 52 years old?	Jun こさ n no お to うさ n de す。

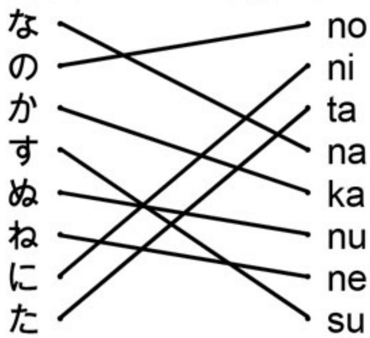
❑ Lesson 4: Short dialogue translation

Mr. Kobayashi:	What (kind of) car is your car, Mr. Tanaka?
Mr. Tanaka:	My car is a Nissan. What about yours?
Mr. Kobayashi:	My car is a Mitsubishi. Its color is red.
Mr. Tanaka:	I see. My car is white.

❑ Lesson 5: Word practice

1. なつ
2. に hon
3. ねこ
4. yo なか
5. の mu
6. ね ru
7. なに
8. ぬいぐ rumi
9. にがい
10. おねえさ n
11. ぬぐ
12. の ru

❑ Lesson 5: Hiragana matching



❑ Lesson 5: Question and answer 1

Question	**Answer**
1a. Is this fish?	いいえ、さかな ja ないです。
1b. Well then, what is it?	Chikin です。
2a. Is this a book?	いいえ、hon ja ないです。
2b. Well then, what is it?	し nbun です。
3a. Is this a bowl and a spoon?	いいえ、(お) chawan と supu–n ja ないです。
3b. Well then, what are they?	(お) chawan と (お) ha しです。
4a. Are these shoes?	いいえ、くつ ja ないです。
4b. Well then, what are they?	ず bon です。

❑ Lesson 5: Question and answer 2

1. Which one do you like/dislike? こ re がすき / き ra いです。
2. Which one do you like/dislike? こ re がすき / き ra いです。

❑ Lesson 5: Question and answer 3 (sample answers)

Question	**Answer**
1. Do you like traveling?	Ha い、すきです / いいえ、き ra いです。
2. Do you dislike cats?	Ha い、き ra いです / いいえ、すきです。
3. Do you like vegetables?	Ha い、すきです / いいえ、すき ja ないです。
4. Do you like Japanese?	Ha い、だいすきです / いいえ、だいき ra いです。
5. Does sushi taste good?	Ha い、おいしいです / いいえ、おいしくないです。

❑ Lesson 5: Japanese translation

1. Yoshio san likes cars a lot.
2. Yoshio san's cars are red and white.
   (this sentence could mean, "Yoshio's car is red and white," but from the context of the other sentences we see that he has two cars.)

3. His white car is a Honda.
4. The red one is a Toyota.
5. Yoshio's father likes cars a lot.
   (This would be better as "Yoshio's father also likes cars a lot," but we haven't learned the "also" particle.)

6. His father's cars are a gold car and a yellow car.
7. His mother does not like the yellow car.

❑ Lesson 5: Reading comprehension translation

① Satoko's boyfriend's name is Yoshio Tanaka.
② Satoko is 25 years old.
③ Yoshio is 27 years old.
④ Satoko likes shopping a lot.
⑤ Yoshio doesn't like shopping.
⑥ Yoshio likes work.
⑦ Satoko dislikes work.
⑧ Satoko and Yoshio like travel a lot.

❑ Lesson 5: Reading comprehension questions

Question	Answer
1. Who is Satoko's boyfriend?	たなか yo しおさんです。
2. Does Yoshio dislike his work?	いいえ、しごとがすきです。
3. How old is Satoko?	に ju うごさいです。
4. Who likes shopping?	さとこさんが（かい mo のが）すきです。
5. Who likes traveling?	さとこさんと yo しおさんが（ryo こうが）すきです。

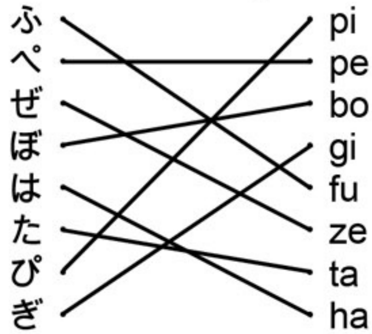
❑ Lesson 5: Short dialogue translation

Ms. Mori: Do you like movies, Ms. Nishida?
Ms. Nishida: Yes, I like them a lot.
Ms. Mori: Me, too. As for actors, who do you like?
Ms. Nishida: I like Harrison Ford.
Ms. Mori: Is that so? I like Brad Pitt.
Ms. Nishida: I also like Brad Pitt, too.

❑ Lesson 6: Word Practice

1. は ru
2. ひ ru ごは n
3. ふ yu
4. へい wa
5. えほ n
6. が n ば ru
7. はなび
8. か mi ぶく ro
9. ひと me ぼ re
10. く ra べ ru
11. ひばな
12. え n ぴつ

❑ Lesson 6: Hiragana matching



❑ Question and answer 1 (sample answers)

1. Which one do/don’t you want? Ju–su が ほしいです / みずが ほしくないです。
2. Which one do/don’t you want? う ma が ほしいです / いぬが ほしくないです。

❑ Lesson 6: Question and answer 2 (sample answers)

1. What color car do you like?
   し ro いく ruma が すきです。

2. Do you want a Japanese magazine?
   はい、ほしいです / いいえ、ほしくないです。

3. Do you want a cold cola?
   はい、つ me たい ko–ra が ほしいです。
   いいえ、ko–ra が き ra いです。

4. Is your TV new?
   はい、あた ra しいです。いいえ、あた ra しくないです。

❑ Lesson 6: Question and answer 3 (answers may vary)

1. Ichiro: なにが ほしいですか。
   Yumiko: Konpyu–ta–が ほしいです。

2. Nurse: Ma く ra が ほしいですか。
   Patient: いいえ、ほしくないです。

❑ Lesson 6: English translation

George: な ma えは な n ですか。
Yu か ri: Yu か ri です。あなたの な ma えは な n ですか。
George: Jo–ji です。さ nju う yon さいです。な n さいですか。
Yu か ri: に ju う ro くさいです。

❑ Lesson 6: Reading comprehension translation

① My name is Matsumoto.
② I like the internet.
③ I want a computer.
④ My friend Tashiro doesn't want a computer.
⑤ Tashiro wants a red car.
⑥ I don't like red cars.
⑦ I like white cars.

❑ Lesson 6: Reading comprehension questions

1. What does Matsumoto like? Inta–netto が すきです。
2. What is Matsumoto's friend's name? たし ro (く n) です。
3. What does Tashiro want? あかいく ruma が ほしいです。
4. Does Matsumoto like red cars? いいえ、すき ja ないです。
5. What color car does Matsumoto like? し ro いく ruma が すきです。

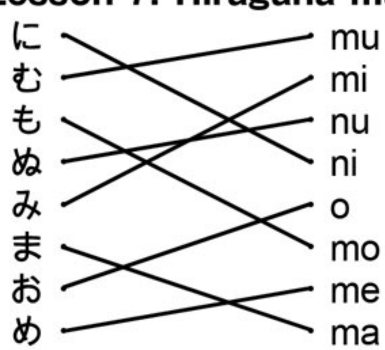
❑ Lesson 6: Short dialogue translation

Mr. Yoshida: Please come in, Karen.
Karen: Thank you (I will come in) .
Mr. Yoshida: What drink would you like?
Karen: Let's see… I want cola.
Mr. Yoshida: Wait a minute. Here you are.
Karen: Thank you.

❑ Lesson 7: Word practice

1. も ri
2. もみじ
3. む ri
4. めだつ
5. みる
6. めがね
7. たべもの
8. まも ru
9. のみもの
10. むしあつい
11. まほう
12. みみず

❑ Lesson 7: Hiragana matching



❑ Lesson 7: Grammar drill

1. みか n が すきです。でも、rin ごは すき ja ないです。
2. いぬが ほしいです。でも、ねこは ほしくないです。
3. いちごが おいしいです。でも、remon は おいしくないです。

❑ Lesson 7: What would you say? (sample answers)

1. Where is a good (delicious) restaurant? ________ です。
2. Where is your house? とう kyo う です。
3. Do you want a Japanese car? はい、ほしいです。/ いいえ、ほしくないです。
4. Do you like green apples? はい、すきです。/ いいえ、すき ja ないです。
5. Is your TV new? はい、あた ra しいです。/ いいえ、ふ ru いです。
6. What color is your bicycle? あか（い）です。
7. Do you want cold water? はい、ほしいです。
   いいえ、ju–su が ほしいです。

❑ Lesson 7: Short dialogue 1

Mr. Tanaka:	Is your house over there, Mike?
Mike:	No, it's there.
Mr. Tanaka:	Huh? Where is it? I don't know (which one?) Is it the green house?
Mike:	No, the green house is my friend's house. The yellow one is mine.
Mr. Tanaka:	Oh, I see.

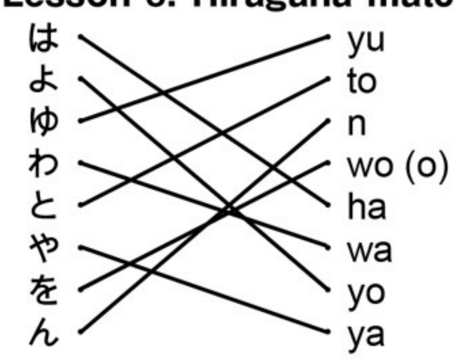
❑ Lesson 7: Short dialogue 2

Mr. Tanaka:	Do you like sushi, Mike?
Mike:	Yes, I love it.
Mr. Tanaka:	What do you like?
Mike:	I like tuna and shrimp.
Mr. Tanaka:	I see. I like halibut and squid. Do you like Japanese tea?
Mike:	No. Japanese tea is not delicious, but I like cola.

❑ Lesson 8: Word practice

1. わ ra う
2. だいこん
3. みずを のむ
4. わ ru い
5. わたし
6. ほんを かう
7. こんや
8. わす reru
9. えいがを み ru
10. きんぞく
11. かんたん
12. すしを たべ ru

❑ Lesson 8: Hiragana matching



❑ Lesson 8: Questions (sample answers)

1. When is your father's birthday? — Ju うがつ に ju ういちにちです。
2. What month and what day is Christmas? — Ju うにがつ に ju うごにちです。
3. What month do you like? — ごがつが すきです。
4. What month and what day is today? — Kyo うは、さ n がつ とおかです。
5. What month and what date was yesterday? — きのうは、さ n がつ ここのかでした。
6. Is Children's Day is July 4th? — いいえ、ちがいます。
   いいえ、ごがつ いつかです。

❑ Lesson 8: Dates (sample answers)

1. Mother's birthday — しちがつ みっか
2. Constitution Day — ごがつ みっか
3. March 15 — さんがつ ju うごにち
4. Culture Day — ju ういちがつ みっか
5. Children's Day — ごがつ いつか
6. April 20 — しがつ はつか

❑ Lesson 8: Japanese translation

Imai san:	When is your birthday?
Yamada san:	It is March 23rd. And yours?
Imai san:	My birthday is tomorrow.
Yamada san:	Congratulations! How old are you? (How old will you be?)
Imai san:	38 years old.

❑ Lesson 8: Reading comprehension translation

① My name is Yukiko.
② Yesterday was my birthday.
③ I am 27 years old.
④ My birthday is (on) Christmas.
⑤ My friend's present was (a set of) red chopsticks.
⑥ My father's present was a Japanese language book.
⑦ I really like Japan.

❑ Lesson 8: Reading comprehension questions

1. When was Yukiko's birthday? — きのうでした。/ 12 がつ 25 にちでした。
2. How old is Yukiko today? — に ju うななさいです。
3. What color chopsticks were her friend's present ? — あかい（お）はしでした。
4. What was her dad's present? — にほんごの ほんでした。
5. Does Yukiko dislike Japan? — いいえ、にほんが だいすきです。

❑ Lesson 8: Short dialogue translation

Mr. Honda:	What day of the month is it today?
Mr. Hino:	It's the ninth.
Mr. Honda:	What? Isn't in the seventh?
Mr. Hino:	No, tomorrow is the tenth.
Mr. Honda:	What am I going to do? Yesterday was my girlfriend's birthday!
Mr. Hino:	Really!?

❑ Lesson 9: Word practice

1. あたらしい
2. しる
3. れんあい
4. りんご
5. みせる
6. れん shu う
7. べんり
8. うるおい
9. かくれんぼ
10. どうろ
11. ろうか
12. まわりみち

❑ Lesson 9: Hiragana matching

る	ru
し	shi
り	ri
ろ	ro
ぬ	nu
れ	re
い	i
ら	ra

❑ Lesson 9: Event dates

1. Kurisumasu	ju にがつ に ju うごにち
2. こどものひ	ごがつ いつか
3. がんたん	いちがつ ついたち
4. （わたしの）たん jo うび	____がつ____にち

❑ Lesson 9: Questions (answers vary based on when answered)

1. What day of the week is the day after tomorrow?	～ようびです。
2. What day was the date and month before yesterday?	～にちでした。
3. What is the date and month of your birthday?	(answers vary)
4. What year was last year?	にせん～ねんでした。
5. What day of the week was the 1st of last month?	～ようびでした。
6. What day is next Thrusday?	～にちです。
7. What day was last Saturday?	～にちでした。
8. What year is next year?	にせん～ねんです。

❑ Lesson 9: Japanese translation

① Today is December 30th.
② The day after tomorrow is New Year's Day.
③ This year's New Year's Day is on Thursday.
④ Last year it was Wednesday.

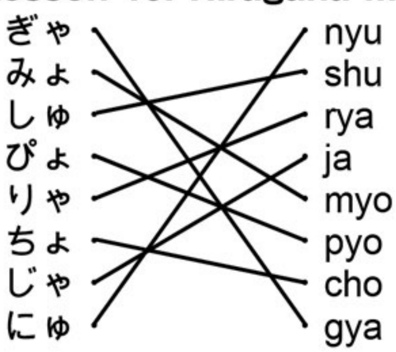
❑ Lesson 9: Short dialogue translation

Yoko:	This Friday is my birthday.
Takahiro:	Really? Happy birthday!
Yoko:	Thanks.
Takahiro:	What year were you born?
Yoko:	I was born in 1973.
Takahiro:	Me, too! My birthday is June 3rd, 1973.
Yoko:	Really?
Takahiro:	When is your birthday party?
Yoko:	It's this Saturday.

❑ Lesson 10: Word practice

1. とうちゃく
2. さんびゃく
3. としょかん
4. ぎゅうにゅう
5. さんみゃく
6. しょうばい
7. じゅうたん
8. でんぴょう
9. きょうだい
10. きょうりゅう
11. りゅうがく
12. ぎゅうどん

❑ Lesson 10: Hiragana matching



❑ Lesson 10: Grammar drill 1

1. Ke–ki を おねがいします / Ke–ki を ください。
2. Piza を おねがいします / Piza を ください。
3. Sandoicchi と ju–su を おねがいします / Sandoicchi と ju–su を ください。
4. Hanba–ga– と Poteto を おねがいします / Hanba–ga– と Poteto を ください。

❑ Lesson 10: Grammar drill 2 (sample answers)

1. はい、あたらしい terebi が ほしいです。あたらしい konpyu–ta–も ほしいです。
   いいえ、あたらしい terebi が ほしくないです。でも、あたらしい konpyu–ta–が ほしいです。

2. はい、はるが だいすきです。でも、なつは すきじゃないです。
   いいえ、はるが すきじゃないです。なつが すきです。

3. いいえ、ko–ra は おいしくないです。ju–su が おいしいです。
   はい、ko–ra は おいしいです。ju–su も おいしいです。

4. いいえ、わたしの くるまは おおきくないです。でも、おかあさんの くるまは おおきいです。
   はい、わたしの くるまは おおきいです。おかあさんの くるまも おおきいです。

❑ Lesson 10: Japanese translation

Waitress: Welcome!
Customer: A menu please.

5 minutes later…

Customer: Excuse me.
Waitress: Yes.
Customer: Spaghetti, please.
Waitress: What would you like to drink?
Customer: Water please.
Waitress: Okay, Please wait a few moments.

10 minutes later…

Waitress: Here you go.
Customer: Thank you. Please give me tea and a cola.
Waitress: Okay, Please wait a few moments.

40 minutes later…

Customer: How much is it?
Waitress: 2,521 yen.
Customer: Okay.
Waitress: The change is 479 yen. Thank you very much.

❑ Lesson 10: Short dialogue translation

Waitress: Welcome. Here is our menu.
Sayuri: The tempura is tasty here.
Chieko: Really? Well then, I would like tempura.
Sayuri: I like tempura, too. But today I would like tonkatsu.
Chieko: Ok then, tempura and tonkatsu please.
Waitress: Certainly. What would you like for a drink?
Sayuri: I would like an iced tea.
Chieko: (Green) tea for me, please.
Waitress: Certainly.

❑ Lesson 11: Japanese questions (sample answers)

1. How many legs does a horse have? よんほんです。
2. How many stars are there on the American flag? ごじゅっこです。
3. How many pencils do you want? ごほん、ほしいです。
4. How many pizzas do you want? いちまい、ほしいです。

❑ Lesson 11: English questions

1. しろい ほしは いくつですか。 よっつです。/ よんこです。
2. えんぴつは なんぼんですか。 はっぽんです。
3. ゆびは なんぼんですか。 じゅっぽんです。 / じっぽんです。
4. はたは なんぼんですか。 ろっぽんです。

(flags on a pole use the なんぼん counter. If not on a pole, it would be the なんまい counter)

6. とけいは いくつですか。 よっつです。

❑ Lesson 11: Grammar drill

1. Chiketto を にまい おねがいします / Chiketto を にまい ください。
2. たまごを じゅうにこ おねがいします / たまごを じゅうにこ ください。
3. Chi–zuba–ga–を ふたつ おねがいします / Chi–zuba–ga–を ふたつ ください。
4. えんぴつを さんぼん おねがいします / えんぴつを さんぼん ください。
5. にんじんを よんほん おねがいします / にんじんを よんほん ください。

❑ Lesson 11: Short dialogue

Sushi Chef:	Welcome.
Jon:	Excuse me, please give me salmon roe (salmon eggs) and yellow tail.
Sushi Chef:	Okay! How about the customer there?
Masami:	I'll have miso soup and a green tea, please. What is today's recommendation?
Sushi Chef:	Let's see… The sweet shrimp is good today.
Masami:	Then give me one of those, please.
Jon:	Can I also have green soybeans, please?
Masami:	I want green soybeans, too. Give us two plates, please.
Sushi Chef:	Got it! (I have understood)

❑ Lesson 12: Grammar drill

Dictionary Form	Polite Forms			
	Present/Future		Past	
	positive	negative	positive	negative
いく	**いきます**	いきません	いきました	いきませんでした
くる	きます	**きません**	きました	きませんでした
かえる	かえります	かえりません	**かえりました**	かえりませんでした
わかる	わかります	わかりません	わかりました	**わかりませんでした**

❑ Lesson 12: Substitution drill

1. きょう、ぎんこうに いきません。
きょう、がっこうに いきません。
きょう、makudonarudo に いきません。
きょう、ともだちのいえに いきません。

2. たなかさんは、おととい とうきょうに かえりました。
たなかさんは、きのう とうきょうに かえりました。
たなかさんは、せんしゅうのきんようび とうきょうに かえりました。
たなかさんは、せんげつのいつか とうきょうに かえ りました。

3. やまもとさんは、にほんに かえりませんでした。
やまもとさんは、amerika に かえりませんでした。
やまもとさんは、rosanzerusu に かえりませんでした。
やまもとさんは、shikago に かえりませんでした。

4. **やまださんは、さんがつに ここに きます。**
   やまださんは、らいげつのふつかに ここに きます。
   やまださんは、らいしゅうのどようびに ここに きます。
   やまださんは、らいねんのごがつに ここに きます。

5. **おかあさんの いえに いきます。**
   おかあさんの いえに いきません。
   おかあさんの いえに いきました。
   おかあさんの いえに いきませんでした。

6. **たむらさんの おとうさんは、にほんごが わかります。**
   たむらさんの おとうさんは、えいごが わかります。
   たむらさんの おとうさんは、konpyu–ta–が わかります。
   たむらさんの おとうさんは、ひらがなとかたかなが わかります。

❑ Lesson 12: Reading comprehension translation

① This is America's Chicago city.
② Mari went to Japan on October 3rd.
③ Yesterday she returned to Chicago.
④ Mari and her friend Yoshiko are going to a party tomorrow.
⑤ Mari's clothing (for the party) is white.
⑥ Yoshiko's are orange.
⑦ Tomorrow is Halloween.
⑧ Mari really likes parties.
⑨ In September she went to Yoshiko's Father's birthday party.
⑩ Next year on July 10th she is going to Korea.

❑ Lesson 12: Reading comprehension questions

1. Where did Mari return to yesterday?
   Shikago に かえりました。

2. What is Mari's friend's name?
   よしこさん です。

3. What is the month and day of the month today?
   じゅうがつ さんじゅうにちです。
   (because tomorrow is Halloween in sentence 7)

4. Where did Mari go in September?
   よしこさんの おとうさんの たんじょうび pa–ti–に いきました。

5. Where is Mari going next year?
   かんこくに いきます。

6. Where is here?
   Shikago しです。OR Amerika の Shikago しです。

7. Where did Mari go in August?
   Did this one confuse you? It should have because we don't really know where Mari went in August.
   So the answer is: わかりません。

❑ Lesson 12: Short dialogue translation

Ms. Smith: Good afternoon, Mr. Tanaka.
Mr. Tanaka: Good afternoon, Ms. Smith. It sure is hot isn't it?
Ms. Smith: Yes, it's hot.
Mr. Tanaka: Where are you going?
Ms. Smith: I'm going to school (from) now.
Mr. Tanaka: What school is it?
Ms. Smith: It's Japanese language school.
Mr. Tanaka: I see. I'm going to work now.

❑ Lesson 12: English translation

Ryouhei: ちゅうごくに いきます。
Nobuko: わたしは きょねん いきました。いつ いきますか。
Ryouhei: らいげつの はつかです。
Nobuko: いつ かえりますか。
Ryouhei: たぶん さんじゅうにちです / たぶん さんじゅうにちに かえります。
Nobuko: いいですね。

❑ Lesson 13: Grammar drill

1. ろくじ ごふん
2. くじ にじゅっぷん
3. さんじ よんじゅっぷん
4. はちじはん
5. じゅうじ よんじゅうごふん
6. じゅうにじ ごじゅうさんぷん
7. よじはん
8. にじ じゅうななふん
9. しちじ ななふん

❑ Lesson 13: Question and answer (answers may vary)

1. From what time does your work/school start? しごとは、くじからです。
2. What time do you go to work/school ? はちじに がっこうに いきます。
3. What days of the week do you go to work/school? げつようびから きんようびまで がっこうに いきます。
4. What time do you go home? ろくじに いえに かえります。
5. What time is it now? いま、よじはんです。
6. From what time to what time is your Japanese class? ごじから ろくじはんまでです。
7. Who is your Japanese teacher? やまだせんせいです。
8. From what month to what month is winter? じゅうにがつから にがつまでです。
9. From what month to what month is summer? ろくがつから くがつまでです。

❑ Lesson 13: Reading comprehension translation

① This is a Japanese language school.
② Sam came here at 10:00AM
③ John came at 10:15.
④ Today's class is from 10:30 to 1:00PM.
⑤ Sam will return home at 2:00.
⑥ She will go to work at 4:00PM.

⑦ Sam's job is from 4:30 to 1:30AM.
⑧ Sam's job is a hotel job.
⑨ John will go to Spanish school at 2:30.
⑩ Spanish school is until three.
⑪ He will return home at six.
⑫ He has a part time job from 8:00PM.
⑬ He goes at 7:55.
⑭ His part time job is until twelve.
⑮ John's part time job is McDonald's.

❑ Lesson 13: Reading comprehension questions

1. Where is here?
   にほんごの がっこうです。

2. Who came to school at ten o'clock?
   Samu でした。

3. When is today's class?
   じゅうじから ごごいちじまで です。

4. From what time until what time is Sam's work?
   よじはんから ごぜんいちじまで です。

5. What time did Sam return home?
   にじに かえりました。

6. From what time until what time is John's part time job?
   ごごはちじから じゅうにじまでです。

7. What time did John come to Japanese school?
   じゅうじ じゅうごふんに きました。

8. Where did John go at 2:30?
   Supein ごの がっこうに いきました。

❑ Lesson 13: Japanese translation

1. A: From when do you work? / When does your work start?
   B: It starts from February 8th.
   A: From what time until what time is the job?
   B: It is from 8:00 A.M. to 4:00 P.M.

2. A: What time is it now?
   B: 4:20.
   A: I am going home at 4:30.
   B: Where is your house?
   A: It's over there.

3. A: I am returning to Japan from tomorrow. *(perfectly correct sentence in Japanese.)*
   B: Until when?
   A: Until August 15th.
   B: Is that so? That's nice.

❑ Lesson 13: English translation

1. A: いつ ここに きましたか。
   B: くじに きました。
   A: ともだちは どこですか。
   B: ともだちは きませんでした。
   A: いま ともだちは どこですか。
   B: いえに います。

2. A: なんじの ひこうきですか。/ ひこうきは なんじですか。
   B: ごぜん じゅうじはんです。
   A: なんじに くうこうに いきますか。
   B: くじに いきます。
   A: わかりました。

3. A: Arubaito は なんじから ですか。
   B: いちじから です。
   A: Arubaito が すきですか。
   B: いいえ、すきじゃない です。

❑ Lesson 13: Particles

1. わたしの しごとは はちじから ごじまでです。
2. せんげつの じゅうごにちは もくようびでした。
3. なんじに いえに かえりますか。
4. やまださんの くるまは しろと gure–です。
5. いぬが すきです。でも、ねこは きらいです。
6. あたらしいじてんしゃが ほしいです。
7. どれが たなかさんの ほんですか。
8. かようびに とうきょうに いきます。
9. Hanba–ga–と potato を おねがいします。 Ko–ra も おねがいします

❑ Lesson 13: Short dialogue translation

Mr. Watanabe:	Are you also working from 8:00 tomorrow, Mr. Hashimoto?
Mr. Hashimoto:	No, tomorrow I'm off.
Mr. Watanabe:	That's nice. Where are you going, tomorrow?
Mr. Hashimoto:	I'm going to Osaka.
Mr. Watanabe	(By) airplane?
Mr. Hashimoto:	Yes, (by) the nine o'clock plane. I'm going to the airport at eight.
Mr. Watanabe	Is that so? When are you coming back?
Mr. Hashimoto:	I'm coming back to Tokyo on next Tuesday.

English Glossary

#

0	rei, maru, zero	れい、まる、ゼロ
1	ichi	いち
2	ni	に
3	san	さん
4	shi, yon	し、よん
5	go	ご
6	roku	ろく
7	shichi, nana	しち、なな
8	hachi	はち
9	ku, kyuu	く、きゅう
10	juu	じゅう
1 minute	ippun	いっぷん
10 minutes	juppun	じゅっぷん
11 minutes	juuippun	じゅういっぷん
12 minutes	juunifun	じゅうにふん
13 minutes	juusanpun	じゅうさんぷん
14 minutes	juuyonpun	じゅうよんぷん
15 minutes	juugofun	じゅうごふん
16 minutes	juuroppun	じゅうろっぷん
17 minutes	juunanafun	じゅうななふん
18 minutes	juuhachifun	じゅうはちふん
18 minutes	juuhachifun	じゅうはちふん
19 minutes	juukyuufun	じゅうきゅうふん
2 minutes	nifun	にふん
20 minutes	nijuppun	にじゅっぷん
25 minutes	nijuugofun	にじゅうごふん
3 minutes	sanpun	さんぷん
30 minutes	sanjuppun	さんじゅっぷん
35 minutes	sanjuugofun	さんじゅうごふん
4 minutes	yonpun	よんぷん
40 minutes	yonjuppun	よんじゅっぷん
45 minutes	yonjuugofun	よんじゅうごふん
5 minutes	gofun	ごふん
50 minutes	gojuppun	ごじゅっぷん
55 minutes	gojuugofun	ごじゅうごふん
6 minutes	roppun	ろっぷん
60 minutes	rokujuppun	ろくじゅっぷん
7 minutes	nanafun	ななふん
8 minutes	hachifun	はちふん
8 minutes	happun	はっぷん
9 minutes	kyuufun	きゅうふん

A

a girl's first name	satoko	さとこ
a joke	joudan	じょうだん
acorn	donguri	どんぐり
actor	haiyuu	はいゆう
afternoon	gogo	ごご

airplane	hikouki	ひこうき
airport	kuukou	くうこう
AM	gozen	ごぜん
America	amerika	アメリカ
an announcement	happyou	はっぴょう
ant	ari	あり
apple	ringo	りんご
April	shigatsu	しがつ
August	hachigatsu	はちがつ

B

baby	akachan	あかちゃん
banana	banana	バナナ
bank	ginkou	ぎんこう
basketball	basuketto booru	バスケットボール
bath	ofuro	おふろ
bear	kuma	くま
bed	beddo	ベッド
beef	bi–fu	ビーフ
bicycle	jitensha	じてんしゃ
big	ookii	おおきい
bird	tori	とり
birthday	tanjoubi	たんじょうび
black (adj.)	kuroi	くろい
black (noun)	kuro	くろ
blanket	moufu	もうふ
blue (adj.)	aoi	あおい
blue (noun)	ao	あお
boiled rice	gohan	ごはん
book	hon	ほん
bowl	ochawan, chawan	おちゃわん, ちゃわん
Brad Pitt (actor)	Braddo Pitto	ブラッド・ピット
bread	pan	パン
brown (adj.)	chairoi	ちゃいろい
brown (noun)	chairo	ちゃいろ
bullet train	shinkansen	しんかんせん
bus	basu	バス
business card	meishi	めいし
but	demo	でも

C

cake	keeki	ケーキ
calendar	karenda–	カレンダー
California	kariforunia	カリフォルニア
camera	kamera	かめら
Canada	kanada	カナダ
car	kuruma	くるま
carbonation	tansan	たんさん
carpet	juutan	じゅうたん
carrot	ninjin	にんじん
cat	neko	ねこ
cellular phone	keitaidenwa	けいたいでんわ
chair	isu	いす
change	otsuri	おつり
cheeseburger	chi–zuba–ga–	チーズバーガー

chest	mune	むね
chestnut	kuri	くり
Chicago	shikago	シカゴ
chicken	chikin	チキン
Children's Day	kodomonohi	こどものひ
China	chuugoku	ちゅうごく
chopsticks	ohashi, hashi	おはし, はし
Christmas	kurisumasu	クリスマス
cigarettes	tabako	たばこ
city	~shi	~し
class	jugyou	じゅぎょう
clear	toumei	とうめい
clock	tokei	とけい
clothing, clothes	fuku	ふく
cockroach	gokiburi	ごきぶり
coffee	ko–hi–	コーヒー
cola	ko–ra	コーラ
cold	samui	さむい
cold drinking water	ohiya	おひや
cold to the touch	tsumetai	つめたい
color	iro	いろ
computer	konpyu–ta–	コンピューター
confusion	konran	こんらん
Constitution Day	kenpoukinenbi	けんぽうきねんび
contact	renraku	れんらく
contents	mokuji	もくじ
cow	ushi	うし
crab	kani	かに
Culture Day	bunkanohi	ぶんかのひ
cup; glass	koppu	コップ
customer, guest	okyakusan	おきゃくさん

D

date of birth	seinengappi	せいねんがっぴ
day after tomorrow	asatte	あさって
day before yesterday	ototoi	おととい
day off, break	yasumi	やすみ
dear, longed for	natsukashii	なつかしい
December	juunigatsu	じゅうにがつ
dessert	deza–to	デザート
diagonal	naname	ななめ
diary	nikki	にっき
dictionary	jisho	じしょ
difficult	muzukashii	むずかしい
dinosaur	kyouryuu	きょうりゅう
dislike, hate	kirai	きらい
doesn't taste good	oishikunai	おいしくない
dog	inu	いぬ
dollars	doru	ドル
down	shita	した
drink, drinks	onomimono	おのみもの
drink, drinks	nomimono	のみもの
duck	ahiru	あひる

E

ear	mimi	みみ
east	higashi	ひがし
egg	tamago	たまご
eight o'clock	hachiji	はちじ
elephant	zou	ぞう
eleven o'clock	juuichiji	じゅういちじ
explosion	bakuhatsu	ばくはつ
eye	me	め

F

face	kao	かお
father	otousan	おとうさん
February	nigatsu	にがつ
finger	yubi	ゆび
fire truck	shoubousha	しょうぼうしゃ
fish	sakana	さかな
five o'clock	goji	ごじ
flag	hata	はた
flowers	hana	はな
food	tabemono	たべもの
foot; leg	ashi	あし
forgotten item	wasuremono	わすれもの
fork	fo–ku	フォーク
four o'clock	yoji	よじ
fox	kitsune	きつね
free time	hima	ひま
French fries	poteto	ポテト
Friday	kinyoubi	きんようび
friend	tomodachi	ともだち
frog	kaeru	かえる
from now / from now on	imakara	いまから
frost	shimo	しも
fruit	furu–tsu	フルーツ
fruit	kudamono	くだもの
fun park	yuuenchi	ゆうえんち
futon	futon	ふとん

G

gambling	gyanburu	ギャンブル
giraffe	kirin	きりん
glasses	megane	めがね
gold	kiniro	きんいろ
Golden Week	goruden wi–ku	ゴールデンウィーク
goldfish	kingyo	きんぎょ
golf	gorufu	ゴルフ
good afternoon	konnichiwa	こんにちは
good bye, farewell	sayounara	さようなら
good morning	ohayou gozaimasu	おはよう ございます
good night	oyasuminasai	おやすみなさい
graffiti	rakugaki	らくがき
grandfather	ojiisan	おじいさん
grandmother	obaasan	おばあさん
grapes	budou	ぶどう

grass	shibafu	しばふ
gray	guree	グレー
gray	haiiro	はいいろ
green	midori	みどり
green onion	negi	ねぎ
green tea	ocha	おちゃ
gun	teppou	てっぽう

H

half past (:30)	han	はん
halibut	hirame	ひらめ
hallway	rouka	ろうか
hand	te	て
Harrison Ford (actor)	Harison Fo–do	ハリソン・フォード
head	atama	あたま
heat pad	kairo	かいろ
hello (on the phone)	moshimoshi	もしもし
her, she, girlfriend	kanojo	かのじょ
here, this place	koko	ここ
high pressure	kouatsu	こうあつ
him, he, boyfriend	kare	かれ
hobby	shumi	しゅみ
homework	shukudai	しゅくだい
horse	uma	うま
hot	atsui	あつい
house	ie	いえ
house fly	hae	はえ
How are you? (Are you fine?)	genki desu ka	げんき です か
How many cylindrical objects?	nanbon	なんぼん
How many round objects?	nanko	なんこ
How many thin and flat objects?	nanmai	なんまい
How many things?	ikutsu	いくつ
How much?	ikura	いくら

I

I, me (male or female)	watashi	わたし
I, me (males only)	boku	ぼく
ice cream	aisu kuri–mu	アイス·クリーム
I'm fine	genki desu	げんき です
imitation	mane	まね
Independence Day	dokuritsu kinenbi	どくりつきねんび
inside	naka	なか
internet	inta–netto	インターネット

J

January	ichigatsu	いちがつ
Japan	nihon	にほん
Japanese language	nihongo	にほんご
Japanese teacher	nihongo no sensei	にほんごの せんせい
juice	ju–su	ジュース
July	shichigatsu	しちがつ
June	rokugatsu	ろくがつ

K

key	kagi	かぎ
kindergarten	youchien	ようちえん
Kobe (city)	koube	こうべ
Korea	kankoku	かんこく

L

landmark	mejirushi	めじるし
language	~go	~ご
laptop computer	no–to pasokon	ノートパソコン
Las Vegas	rasu begasu	ラスベガス
last month	sengetsu	せんげつ
last week	senshuu	せんしゅう
last year	kyonen	きょねん
left	hidari	ひだり
lemon	remon	レモン
lettuce	retasu	レタス
light blue	mizuiro	みずいろ
like	suki	すき
lion	raion	ライオン
liquid, fluid	ekitai	えきたい
lizard	tokage	とかげ
lobster	robusuta–	ロブスター
Los Angeles	rosanzerusu	ロサンゼルス
low pressure	teiatsu	ていあつ

M

magazine	zasshi	ざっし
March	sangatsu	さんがつ
married couple	fuufu	ふうふ
May	gogatsu	ごがつ
maybe	tabun	たぶん
meat	niku	にく
menu	menyu–	メニュー
milk	miruku	ミルク
mirror	kagami	かがみ
miso soup	misoshiru	みそしる
Monday	getsuyoubi	げつようび
money	okane	おかね
monkey	saru	さる
monster	kaijuu	かいじゅう
moonlight	gekkou	げっこう
morning	gozen	ごぜん
mother	okaasan	おかあさん
mouse	nezumi	ねずみ
mouth	kuchi	くち
movie	eiga	えいが
Mr., Ms., Mrs., Miss	~san (after name)	さん
music	ongaku	おんがく

N

name	namae	なまえ
nationality	~jin	~じん
new	atarashii	あたらしい

New Year's Day	gantan	がんたん
newspaper	shinbun	しんぶん
next month	raigetsu	らいげつ
next week	raishuu	らいしゅう
next year	rainen	らいねん
nice, good	ii、yoi	いい 、よい
nine o'clock	kuji	くじ
no	iie	いいえ
north	kita	きた
nose	hana	はな
November	juuichigatsu	じゅういちがつ
now	ima	いま

O

October	juugatsu	じゅうがつ
of course	mochiron	もちろん
Oh!	a!!	あっ！
old	furui	ふるい
old person	roujin	ろうじん
one o'clock	ichiji	いちじ
onion	tamanegi	たまねぎ
orange (color)	orenji	オレンジ
orange (fruit)	mikan / orenji	みかん / オレンジ
outside	soto	そと
over there, that place over there	asoko	あそこ

P

panda	panda	パンダ
pants	zubon	ズボン
paper	kami	かみ
part-time job	arubaito	アルバイト
party	pa–ti–	パーティー
patrol car	patoka–	パトカー
PC (computer)	pasokon	パソコン
peach	momo	もも
pen	pen	ペン
pencil	enpitsu	えんぴつ
pepper	koshou	こしょう
pig	buta	ぶた
pigeon; dove	hato	はと
pillow	makura	まくら
pink	pinku	ピンク
pizza	piza	ピザ
plate	(o) sara	(お) さら
PM	gogo	ごご
potato	poteto	ポテト
prefecture	~ken	~けん
present, gift	purezento	プレゼント
purple	murasaki	むらさき

R

rabbit	usagi	うさぎ
radish	daikon	だいこん
rare (adj.)	mezurashii	めずらしい

really dislike, really hate	daikirai	だいきらい
really like, like a lot	daisuki	だいすき
reason	riyuu	りゆう
red	aka	あか
red	akai	あかい
refrigerator	reizouko	れいぞうこ
region	chiiki	ちいき
restaurant	resutoran	レストラン
restroom	otearai	おてあらい
right	migi	みぎ
rise in price	neage	ねあげ
rock	iwa	いわ
roof	yane	やね
rumor	uwasa	うわさ

S

salt	shio	しお
sand box	sunaba	すなば
sandwich	sandoicchi	サンドイッチ
sandwich (short vers.)	sando	サンド
Saturday	doyoubi	どようび
school	gakkou	がっこう
screw	neji	ねじ
September	kugatsu	くがつ
seven o'clock	shichiji	しちじ
sheep	hitsuji	ひつじ
shiny	pikapika	ぴかぴか
ship; boat	fune	ふね
shoe	kutsu	くつ
shopping	kaimono	かいもの
shrimp	ebi	えび
sightseeing	kankou	かんこう
silver	giniro	ぎんいろ
six o'clock	rokuji	ろくじ
small	chiisai	ちいさい
snack, snacks	okashi	おかし
snake	hebi	へび
soap	sekken	せっけん
soccer	sakka–	サッカー
soldier	heitai	へいたい
south	minami	みなみ
spaghetti	supagetti–	スパゲッティー
spring	haru	はる
spoon	supu–n	スプーン
Sports Day	taiikunohi	たいいくのひ
squid	ika	いか
star (in the sky)	hoshi	ほし
state	~shuu	~しゅう
steel	kane	かね
storm	arashi	あらし
strawberry	ichigo	いちご
Sunday	nichiyoubi	にちようび
surgery	shujutsu	しゅじゅつ
sushi	sushi	すし

T

tastes good, delicious	oishii	おいしい
teacher	sensei	せんせい
telephone	denwa	でんわ
television	terebi	テレビ
ten o'clock	juuji	じゅうじ
thank you, thanks	arigatou	ありがとう
that one (out of 2)	socchi	そっち
that one (out of 3 or more)	sore	それ
that one over there (out of 2)	acchi	あっち
that one over there (out of 3 or more)	are	あれ
That's great. / That's awesome.	sugoi desu ne	すごい です ね
there, that place	soko	そこ
thief	dorobou	どろぼう
this month	kongetsu	こんげつ
this one (out of 2)	kocchi	こっち
this one (out of 3 or more)	kore	これ
this week	konshuu	こんしゅう
this year	kotoshi	ことし
three o'clock	sanji	さんじ
thunder; lightning	kaminari	かみなり
Thursday	mokuyoubi	もくようび
tickets	chiketto	チケット
to come	kuru	くる
to drink water	mizuwo nomu	みずを のむ
to go	iku	いく
to move an item	hakobu	はこぶ
to return	kaeru	かえる
to stand out	medatsu	めだつ
to understand, know	wakaru	わかる
to undress	nugu	ぬぐ
today	kyou	きょう
toilet	toire	トイレ
tomato	tomato	トマト
tomorrow	ashita	あした
tooth, teeth	ha	は
toothbrush	haburashi	ハブラシ
tortoise; turtle	kame	かめ
towel	taoru	タオル
train	densha	でんしゃ
trash can	gomibako	ごみばこ
travel	ryokou	りょこう
tricycle	sanrinsha	さんりんしゃ
Tuesday	kayoubi	かようび
tuna	maguro	まぐろ
twelve o'clock	juuniji	じゅうにじ
two o'clock	niji	にじ

U

umbrella	kasa	かさ
up	ue	うえ

V

vegetable	yasai	やさい
violence	ranbou	らんぼう

W

want	hoshii	ほしい
warm, luke warm	nurui	ぬるい
water	mizu	みず
watermelon	suika	すいか
Wednesday	suiyoubi	すいようび
Well, then~	ja, jaa	じゃ、じゃあ
west	nishi	にし
what color?	nani iro	なにいろ
what day of the month?	nannichi	なんにち
what day of the week?	nanyoubi	なんようび
what language?	nanigo	なにご
what month?	nangatsu	なんがつ
what nationality?	nanijin	なにじん
what time?	nanji	なんじ
what year?	nannen	なんねん
what?	nani	なに
what?, which?, what kind of?	nanno ?	なんの？
when?	itsu	いつ
where?, what place?	doko	どこ
which one (three or more)	dore	どれ
which one (two items)	docchi	どっち
white (adj.)	shiroi	しろい
white (noun)	shiro	しろ
who?	dare	だれ
wife	oyomesan	およめさん
window	mado	まど
wisdom	chie	ちえ
work	shigoto	しごと
wrinkles	shiwa	しわ

Y

yellow (adj.)	kiiroi	きいろい
yellow (noun)	kiiro	きいろ
yen	en	えん
yes	hai	はい
yesterday	kinou	きのう
Yoshio - common boy's first name	Yoshio	よしお
you	anata	あなた

Ro–maji Glossary

A

a!!	Oh!	あっ！
acchi	that one over there (out of 2)	あっち
ahiru	duck	あひる
aisu kuri–mu	ice cream	アイス·クリーム
aka	red	あか
akachan	baby	あかちゃん
akai	red	あかい
amerika	America	アメリカ
anata	you	あなた
ao	blue (noun)	あお
aoi	blue (adj.)	あおい
arashi	a storm	あらし
are	that one over there (out of 3 or more)	あれ
ari	ant	あり
arigatou	thank you, thanks	ありがとう
arubaito	part-time job	アルバイト
asatte	day after tomorrow	あさって
ashi	foot; leg	あし
ashita	tomorrow	あした
asoko	over there, that place over there	あそこ
atama	head	あたま
atarashii	new	あたらしい
atsui	hot	あつい

B

bakuhatsu	explosion	ばくはつ
banana	banana	バナナ
basu	bus	バス
basuketto booru	basketball	バスケットボール
beddo	bed	ベッド
bi–fu	beef	ビーフ
boku	I, me (males only)	ぼく
Braddo Pitto	Brad Pitt (actor)	ブラッド・ピット
budou	grapes	ぶどう
bunkanohi	Culture Day	ぶんかのひ
buta	pig	ぶた

C

chairo	brown (noun)	ちゃいろ
chairoi	brown (adj.)	ちゃいろい
chawan	bowl	ちゃわん
chie	wisdom	ちえ
chiiki	region	ちいき
chiisai	small	ちいさい
chiketto	tickets	チケット
chikin	chicken	チキン
chi–zuba–ga–	cheeseburger	チーズバーガー
chuugoku	China	ちゅうごく

D

daikirai	really dislike, really hate	だいきらい
daikon	radish	だいこん
daisuki	really like, like a lot	だいすき
dare	who?	だれ
demo	but	でも
densha	train	でんしゃ
denwa	telephone	でんわ
deza–to	dessert	デザート
docchi	which one (two items)	どっち
doko	where?, what place?	どこ
dokuritsu kinenbi	Independence Day	どくりつきねんび
donguri	acorn	どんぐり
dore	which one (three or more)	どれ
dorobou	a thief	どろぼう
doru	dollars	ドル
doyoubi	Saturday	どようび

E

ebi	shrimp	えび
eiga	movie	えいが
ekitai	liquid, fluid	えきたい
en	yen	えん
enpitsu	pencil	えんぴつ

F

fo–ku	fork	フォーク
fuku	clothing, clothes	ふく
fune	ship; boat	ふね
furui	old	ふるい
furu–tsu	fruit	フルーツ
futon	futon	ふとん
fuufu	married couple	ふうふ

G

gakkou	school	がっこう
gantan	New Year's Day	がんたん
gekkou	moonlight	げっこう
genki desu	I'm fine	げんき です
genki desu ka	How are you? (Are you fine?)	げんき です か
getsuyoubi	Monday	げつようび
giniro	silver	ぎんいろ
ginkou	bank	ぎんこう
go	~ language	~ご
go	5	ご
gofun	5 minutes	ごふん
gogatsu	May	ごがつ
gogo	PM (also means afternoon)	ごご
gohan	boiled rice	ごはん
goji	five o'clock	ごじ
gojuppun	50 minutes	ごじゅっぷん
gojuugofun	55 minutes	ごじゅうごふん
gokiburi	cockroach	ごきぶり
gomibako	trash can	ごみばこ

goruden wi–ku	Golden Week	ゴールデンウィーク
gorufu	golf	ゴルフ
gozen	AM (also means morning)	ごぜん
guree	gray	グレー
gyanburu	gambling	ギャンブル

H

ha	tooth, teeth	は
haburashi	toothbrush	ハブラシ
hachi	8	はち
hachifun	8 minutes	はちふん
hachigatsu	August	はちがつ
hachiji	eight o'clock	はちじ
hae	house fly	はえ
hai	yes	はい
haiiro	gray	はいいろ
haiyuu	actor	はいゆう
hakobu	to move an item	はこぶ
han	half past (:30)	はん
hana	flowers	はな
hana	nose	はな
happun	8 minutes	はっぷん
happyou	an announcement	はっぴょう
Harison Fo–do	Harrison Ford (actor)	ハリソン・フォード
haru	spring	はる
hashi	chopsticks	はし
hata	flag	はた
hato	pigeon; dove	はと
hebi	snake	へび
heitai	soldier	へいたい
hidari	left	ひだり
higashi	east	ひがし
hikouki	airplane	ひこうき
hima	free time	ひま
hirame	halibut	ひらめ
hitsuji	sheep	ひつじ
hon	book	ほん
hoshi	star (in the sky)	ほし
hoshii	want	ほしい

I

ichi	1	いち
ichigatsu	January	いちがつ
ichigo	strawberry	いちご
ichiji	one o'clock	いちじ
ie	house	いえ
ii、yoi	nice, good	いい 、よい
iie	no	いいえ
ika	squid	いか
iku	to go	いく
ikura	How much?	いくら
ikutsu	How many things?	いくつ
ima	now	いま
imakara	from now / from now on	いまから

inta–netto	internet	インターネット
inu	dog	いぬ
ippun	1 minute	いっぷん
iro	color	いろ
isu	chair	いす
itsu	when?	いつ
iwa	rock	いわ

J

ja, jaa	well, then~	じゃ、じゃあ
jin	~ nationality	~じん
jisho	dictionary	じしょ
jitensha	bicycle	じてんしゃ
joudan	a joke	じょうだん
jugyou	class	じゅぎょう
juppun	10 minutes	じゅっぷん
ju–su	juice	ジュース
juu	10	じゅう
juugatsu	October	じゅうがつ
juugofun	15 minutes	じゅうごふん
juuhachifun	18 minutes	じゅうはちふん
juuhachifun	18 minutes	じゅうはちふん
juuichigatsu	November	じゅういちがつ
juuichiji	eleven o'clock	じゅういちじ
juuippun	11 minutes	じゅういっぷん
juuji	ten o'clock	じゅうじ
juukyuufun	19 minutes	じゅうきゅうふん
juunanafun	17 minutes	じゅうななふん
juunifun	12 minutes	じゅうにふん
juunigatsu	December	じゅうにがつ
juuniji	twelve o'clock	じゅうにじ
juuroppun	16 minutes	じゅうろっぷん
juusanpun	13 minutes	じゅうさんぷん
juutan	carpet	じゅうたん
juuyonpun	14 minutes	じゅうよんぷん

K

kaeru	frog	かえる
kaeru	to return	かえる
kagami	mirror	かがみ
kagi	key	かぎ
kaijuu	a monster	かいじゅう
kaimono	shopping	かいもの
kairo	heat pad	かいろ
kame	tortoise; turtle	かめ
kamera	camera	かめら
kami	paper	かみ
kaminari	thunder; lightning	かみなり
kanada	Canada	カナダ
kane	steel	かね
kani	crab	かに
kankoku	Korea	かんこく
kankou	sightseeing	かんこう
kanojo	her, she, girlfriend	かのじょ
kao	face	かお

kare	him, he, boyfriend	かれ
karenda–	calendar	カレンダー
kariforunia	California	カリフォルニア
kasa	umbrella	かさ
kayoubi	Tuesday	かようび
keeki	cake	ケーキ
keitaidenwa	cellular phone	けいたいでんわ
ken	~ Prefecture	~けん
kenpoukinenbi	Constitution Day	けんぽうきねんび
kiiro	yellow (noun)	きいろ
kiiroi	yellow (adj.)	きいろい
kingyo	goldfish	きんぎょ
kiniro	gold	きんいろ
kinou	yesterday	きのう
kinyoubi	Friday	きんようび
kirai	dislike, hate	きらい
kirin	giraffe	きりん
kita	north	きた
kitsune	fox	きつね
kocchi	this one (out of 2)	こっち
kodomonohi	Children's Day	こどものひ
ko–hi–	coffee	コーヒー
koko	here, this place	ここ
kongetsu	this month	こんげつ
konnichiwa	good afternoon	こんにちは
konpyu–ta–	computer	コンピューター
konran	confusion	こんらん
konshuu	this week	こんしゅう
koppu	cup; glass	コップ
ko–ra	cola	コーラ
kore	this one (out of 3 or more)	これ
koshou	pepper	こしょう
kotoshi	this year	ことし
kouatsu	high pressure	こうあつ
koube	Kobe (city)	こうべ
ku	9	く
kuchi	mouth	くち
kudamono	fruit	くだもの
kugatsu	September	くがつ
kuji	nine o'clock	くじ
kuma	bear	くま
kuri	chestnut	くり
kurisumasu	Christmas	クリスマス
kuro	black (noun)	くろ
kuroi	black (adj.)	くろい
kuru	to come	くる
kuruma	car	くるま
kutsu	shoe	くつ
kuukou	airport	くうこう
kyonen	last year	きょねん
kyou	today	きょう
kyouryuu	dinosaur	きょうりゅう
kyuu	9	きゅう
kyuufun	9 minutes	きゅうふん

M

mado	window	まど
maguro	tuna	まぐろ
makura	pillow	まくら
mane	imitation	まね
maru	circle, zero	まる
me	eye	め
medatsu	to stand out	めだつ
megane	glasses	めがね
meishi	business card	めいし
mejirushi	landmark	めじるし
menyu–	menu	メニュー
mezurashii	rare (adj.)	めずらしい
midori	green	みどり
migi	right	みぎ
mikan / orenji	orange (fruit)	みかん / オレンジ
mimi	ear	みみ
minami	south	みなみ
miruku	milk	ミルク
misoshiru	miso soup	みそしる
mizu	water	みず
mizuiro	light blue	みずいろ
mizuwo nomu	to drink water	みずを のむ
mochiron	of course	もちろん
mokuji	contents	もくじ
mokuyoubi	Thursday	もくようび
momo	peach	もも
moshimoshi	hello (on the phone)	もしもし
moufu	blanket	もうふ
mune	chest	むね
murasaki	purple	むらさき
muzukashii	difficult	むずかしい

N

naka	inside	なか
namae	name	なまえ
nana	7	なな
nanafun	7 minutes	ななふん
naname	diagonal	ななめ
nanbon	How many cylindrical objects?	なんぼん
nangatsu	what month?	なんがつ
nani	what?	なに
nani iro	what color?	なにいろ
nanigo	what language?	なにご
nanijin	what nationality?	なにじん
nanji	what time?	なんじ
nanko	How many round objects?	なんこ
nanmai	How many thin and flat objects?	なんまい
nannen	what year?	なんねん
nannichi	what day of the month?	なんにち
nanno ?	what? which? what kind of?	なんの？
nanyoubi	what day of the week?	なんようび
natsukashii	dear, longed for	なつかしい
neage	a rise in price	ねあげ
negi	green onion	ねぎ

neji	a screw	ねじ
neko	cat	ねこ
nezumi	mouse	ねずみ
ni	2	に
nichiyoubi	Sunday	にちようび
nifun	2 minutes	にふん
nigatsu	February	にがつ
nihon	Japan	にほん
nihongo	Japanese language	にほんご
nihongo no sensei	Japanese teacher	にほんごの せんせい
niji	two o'clock	にじ
nijuppun	20 minutes	にじゅっぷん
nijuugofun	25 minutes	にじゅうごふん
nikki	diary	にっき
niku	meat	にく
ninjin	carrot	にんじん
nishi	west	にし
nomimono	a drink, drinks	のみもの
no–to pasokon	laptop computer	ノートパソコン
nugu	to undress	ぬぐ
nurui	warm, luke warm	ぬるい

O

obaasan	grandmother	おばあさん
ocha	green tea	おちゃ
ochawan	bowl	おちゃわん
ofuro	bath	おふろ
ohashi	chopsticks	おはし
ohayou gozaimasu	good morning	おはよう ございます
ohiya	cold drinking water	おひや
oishii	tastes good, delicious	おいしい
oishikunai	doesn't taste good	おいしくない
ojiisan	grandfather	おじいさん
okaasan	mother	おかあさん
okane	money	おかね
okashi	a snack	おかし
okyakusan	a customer or guest	おきゃくさん
ongaku	music	おんがく
onomimono	a drink	おのみもの
ookii	big	おおきい
orenji	orange (color)	オレンジ
osara	plate	おさら
otearai	restroom	おてあらい
ototoi	day before yesterday	おととい
otousan	father	おとうさん
otsuri	change	おつり
oyasuminasai	good night	おやすみなさい
oyomesan	wife	およめさん

P

pan	bread	パン
panda	panda	パンダ
pasokon	PC (computer)	パソコン
pa–ti–	party	パーティー

patoka–	patrol car	パトカー
pen	pen	ペン
pikapika	shiny	ぴかぴか
pinku	pink	ピンク
piza	pizza	ピザ
poteto	French fries	ポテト
poteto	potato	ポテト
purezento	present, gift	プレゼント

R

raigetsu	next month	らいげつ
rainen	next year	らいねん
raion	lion	ライオン
raishuu	next week	らいしゅう
rakugaki	graffiti	らくがき
ranbou	violence	らんぼう
rasu begasu	Las Vegas	ラスベガス
rei	zero, 0	れい
reizouko	refrigerator	れいぞうこ
remon	lemon	レモン
renraku	contact	れんらく
resutoran	restaurant	レストラン
retasu	lettuce	レタス
ringo	apple	りんご
riyuu	a reason	りゆう
robusuta–	lobster	ロブスター
roku	6	ろく
rokugatsu	June	ろくがつ
rokuji	six o'clock	ろくじ
rokujuppun	60 minutes	ろくじゅっぷん
roppun	6 minutes	ろっぷん
rosanzerusu	Los Angeles	ロサンゼルス
roujin	old person	ろうじん
rouka	hallway	ろうか
ryokou	travel	りょこう

S

sakana	fish	さかな
sakka–	soccer	サッカー
samui	cold	さむい
san	3	さん
san (after name)	Mr., Ms., Mrs., Miss	さん
sando	sandwich (short vers.)	サンド
sandoicchi	sandwich	サンドイッチ
sangatsu	March	さんがつ
sanji	three o'clock	さんじ
sanjuppun	30 minutes	さんじゅっぷん
sanjuugofun	35 minutes	さんじゅうごふん
sanpun	3 minutes	さんぷん
sanrinsha	tricycle	さんりんしゃ
sara	plate	さら
saru	monkey	さる
satoko	a girl's first name	さとこ
sayounara	good bye, farewell	さようなら
seinengappi	date of birth	せいねんがっぴ

sekken	soap	せっけん
sengetsu	last month	せんげつ
sensei	teacher	せんせい
senshuu	last week	せんしゅう
shi	~ City	~し
shi	4	し
shibafu	grass	しばふ
shichi	7	しち
shichigatsu	July	しちがつ
shichiji	seven o'clock	しちじ
shigatsu	April	しがつ
shigoto	work	しごと
shikago	Chicago	シカゴ
shimo	frost	しも
shinbun	newspaper	しんぶん
shinkansen	bullet train	しんかんせん
shio	salt	しお
shiro	white	しろ
shiroi	white	しろい
shita	down	した
shiwa	wrinkles	しわ
shoubousha	fire truck	しょうぼうしゃ
shujutsu	surgery	しゅじゅつ
shukudai	homework	しゅくだい
shumi	hobby	しゅみ
shuu	~ State	~しゅう
socchi	that one (out of 2)	そっち
soko	there, that place	そこ
sore	that one (out of 3 or more)	それ
soto	outside	そと
sugoi desu ne	That's great. / That's awesome.	すごい です ね
suika	watermelon	すいか
suiyoubi	Wednesday	すいようび
suki	like	すき
sunaba	sand box	すなば
supagetti–	spaghetti	スパゲッティー
supu–n	spoon	スプーン
sushi	sushi	すし

T

tabako	cigarettes	たばこ
tabemono	food	たべもの
tabun	maybe	たぶん
taiikunohi	Sports Day	たいいくのひ
tamago	egg	たまご
tamanegi	onion	たまねぎ
tanjoubi	birthday	たんじょうび
tansan	carbonation	たんさん
taoru	towel	タオル
te	hand	て
teiatsu	low pressure	ていあつ
teppou	gun	てっぽう
terebi	television	テレビ
toire	toilet	トイレ
tokage	lizard	とかげ

tokei	clock	とけい
tomato	tomato	トマト
tomodachi	friend	ともだち
tori	bird	とり
toumei	clear	とうめい
tsumetai	cold to the touch	つめたい

U

ue	up	うえ
uma	horse	うま
usagi	rabbit	うさぎ
ushi	cow	うし
uwasa	a rumor	うわさ

W

wakaru	to understand, know	わかる
wasuremono	forgotten item	わすれもの
watashi	I, me (male or female)	わたし

Y

yane	roof	やね
yasai	vegetable	やさい
yasumi	day off, break	やすみ
yoji	four o'clock	よじ
yon	4	よん
yonjuppun	40 minutes	よんじゅっぷん
yonjuugofun	45 minutes	よんじゅうごふん
yonpun	4 minutes	よんぷん
Yoshio	a common boy's first name	よしお
youchien	kindergarten	ようちえん
yubi	finger	ゆび
yuuenchi	fun park	ゆうえんち

Z

zasshi	magazine	ざっし
zero	zero, 0	ゼロ
zou	elephant	ぞう
zubon	pants	ズボン

Kana Glossary

あ

アイス·クリーム	ice cream	aisu kuri–mu
あお	blue (noun)	ao
あおい	blue (adj.)	aoi
あか	red	aka
あかい	red	akai
あかちゃん	baby	akachan
あさって	day after tomorrow	asatte
あし	foot; leg	ashi
あした	tomorrow	ashita
あそこ	over there, that place over there	asoko
あたま	head	atama
あたらしい	new	atarashii
あっ！	Oh!	a!!
あつい	hot	atsui
あっち	that one over there (out of 2)	acchi
あなた	you	anata
あひる	duck	ahiru
アメリカ	America	amerika
あらし	a storm	arashi
あり	ant	ari
ありがとう	thank you, thanks	arigatou
アルバイト	part-time job	arubaito
あれ	that one over there (out of 3 or more)	are

い

いい 、よい	nice, good	ii、yoi
いいえ	no	iie *
いえ	house	ie
いか	squid	ika
いく	to go	iku
いくつ	How many things?	ikutsu
いくら	How much?	ikura
いす	chair	isu
いち	1	ichi
いちがつ	January	ichigatsu
いちご	strawberry	ichigo
いちじ	one o'clock	ichiji
いつ	when?	itsu
いっぷん	1 minute	ippun
いぬ	dog	inu
いま	now	ima
いまから	from now / from now on	imakara
いろ	color	iro
いわ	rock	iwa
インターネット	internet	inta–netto

う

うえ	up	ue
うさぎ	rabbit	usagi
うし	cow	ushi
うま	horse	uma
うわさ	a rumor	uwasa

え

えいが	movie	eiga
えきたい	liquid, fluid	ekitai
えび	shrimp	ebi
えん	yen	en
えんぴつ	pencil	enpitsu

お

おいしい	tastes good, delicious	oishii
おいしくない	doesn't taste good	oishikunai
おおきい	big	ookii
おかあさん	mother	okaasan
おかし	a snack	okashi
おかね	money	okane
おきゃくさん	a customer or guest	okyakusan
おさら	plate	osara
おじいさん	grandfather	ojiisan
おちゃ	green tea	ocha
おちゃわん	bowl	ochawan
おつり	change	otsuri
おてあらい	restroom	otearai
おとうさん	father	otousan
おととい	day before yesterday	ototoi
おのみもの	a drink	onomimono
おばあさん	grandmother	obaasan
おはし	chopsticks	ohashi
おはよう ございます	good morning	ohayou gozaimasu
おひや	cold drinking water	ohiya
おふろ	bath	ofuro
おやすみなさい	good night	oyasuminasai
およめさん	wife	oyomesan
オレンジ	orange (color)	orenji
おんがく	music	ongaku

か

かいじゅう	a monster	kaijuu
かいもの	shopping	kaimono
かいろ	heat pad	kairo
かえる	frog	kaeru
かえる	to return	kaeru
かお	face	kao
かがみ	mirror	kagami

かぎ	key	kagi
かさ	umbrella	kasa
がっこう	school	gakkou
カナダ	Canada	kanada
かに	crab	kani
かね	steel	kane
かのじょ	her, she, girlfriend	kanojo
かみ	paper	kami
かみなり	thunder; lightning	kaminari
かめ	tortoise; turtle	kame
かめら	camera	kamera
かようび	Tuesday	kayoubi
カリフォルニア	California	kariforunia
かれ	him, he, boyfriend	kare
カレンダー	calendar	karenda–
かんこう	sightseeing	kankou
かんこく	Korea	kankoku
がんたん	New Year's Day	gantan

き

きいろ	yellow (noun)	kiiro
きいろい	yellow (adj.)	kiiroi
きた	north	kita
きつね	fox	kitsune
きのう	yesterday	kinou
ギャンブル	gambling	gyanburu
きゅう	9	kyuu
きゅうふん	9 minutes	kyuufun
きょう	today	kyou
きょうりゅう	dinosaur	kyouryuu
きょねん	last year	kyonen
きらい	dislike, hate	kirai
きりん	giraffe	kirin
きんいろ	gold	kiniro
ぎんいろ	silver	giniro
きんぎょ	goldfish	kingyo
ぎんこう	bank	ginkou
きんようび	Friday	kinyoubi

く

く	9	ku
くうこう	airport	kuukou
くがつ	September	kugatsu
くじ	nine o'clock	kuji
くだもの	fruit	kudamono
くち	mouth	kuchi
くつ	shoe	kutsu
くま	bear	kuma
くり	chestnut	kuri
クリスマス	Christmas	kurisumasu
くる	to come	kuru
くるま	car	kuruma

グレー	gray	guree
くろ	black (noun)	kuro
くろい	black (adj.)	kuroi

け

けいたいでんわ	cellular phone	keitaidenwa
ケーキ	cake	keeki
げっこう	moonlight	gekkou
げつようび	Monday	getsuyoubi
けん	~ Prefecture	~ken
げんき です	I'm fine	genki desu
げんき です か	How are you? (Are you fine?)	genki desu ka
けんぽうきねんび	Constitution Day	kenpoukinenbi

こ

ご	~ language	~go
ご	5	go
こうあつ	high pressure	kouatsu
こうべ	Kobe (city)	koube
コーヒー	coffee	ko–hi–
コーラ	cola	ko–ra
ゴールデンウィーク	Golden Week	goruden wi–ku
ごがつ	May	gogatsu
ごきぶり	cockroach	gokiburi
ここ	here, this place	koko
ごご	PM (also means afternoon)	gogo
ごじ	five o'clock	goji
ごじゅうごふん	55 minutes	gojuugofun
ごじゅっぷん	50 minutes	gojuppun
こしょう	pepper	koshou
ごぜん	AM (also means morning)	gozen
こっち	this one (out of 2)	kocchi
コップ	cup; glass	koppu
ことし	this year	kotoshi
こどものひ	Children's Day	kodomonohi
ごはん	boiled rice	gohan
ごふん	5 minutes	gofun
ごみばこ	trash can	gomibako
ゴルフ	golf	gorufu
これ	this one (out of 3 or more)	kore
こんげつ	this month	kongetsu
こんしゅう	this week	konshuu
こんにちは	good afternoon	konnichiwa
コンピューター	computer	konpyu–ta–
こんらん	confusion	konran

さ

さかな	fish	sakana
サッカー	soccer	sakka–
ざっし	magazine	zasshi
さとこ	a girl's first name	satoko

さむい	cold	samui
さようなら	good bye, farewell	sayounara
さら	plate	sara
さる	monkey	saru
さん	3	san
さん	Mr., Ms., Mrs., Miss	san (after name)
さんがつ	March	sangatsu
さんじ	three o'clock	sanji
さんじゅうごふん	35 minutes	sanjuugofun
さんじゅっぷん	30 minutes	sanjuppun
サンド	sandwich (short vers.)	sando
サンドイッチ	sandwich	sandoicchi
さんぷん	3 minutes	sanpun
さんりんしゃ	tricycle	sanrinsha

し

し	~ City	~shi
し	4	shi
しお	salt	shio
シカゴ	Chicago	shikago
しがつ	April	shigatsu
しごと	work	shigoto
じしょ	dictionary	jisho
した	down	shita
しち	7	shichi
しちがつ	July	shichigatsu
しちじ	seven o'clock	shichiji
じてんしゃ	bicycle	jitensha
しばふ	grass	shibafu
しも	frost	shimo
じゃ、じゃあ	well, then~	ja, jaa
しゅう	~ State	~shuu
じゅう	10	juu
じゅういちがつ	November	juuichigatsu
じゅういちじ	eleven o'clock	juuichiji
じゅういっぷん	11 minutes	juuippun
じゅうがつ	October	juugatsu
じゅうきゅうふん	19 minutes	juukyuufun
じゅうごふん	15 minutes	juugofun
じゅうさんぷん	13 minutes	juusanpun
じゅうじ	ten o'clock	juuji
ジュース	juice	ju–su
じゅうたん	carpet	juutan
じゅうななふん	17 minutes	juunanafun
じゅうにがつ	December	juunigatsu
じゅうにじ	twelve o'clock	juuniji
じゅうにふん	12 minutes	juunifun
じゅうはちふん	18 minutes	juuhachifun
じゅうはちふん	18 minutes	juuhachifun
じゅうよんぷん	14 minutes	juuyonpun
じゅうろっぷん	16 minutes	juuroppun
じゅぎょう	class	jugyou
しゅくだい	homework	shukudai
しゅじゅつ	surgery	shujutsu

じゅっぷん	10 minutes	juppun
しゅみ	hobby	shumi
じょうだん	a joke	joudan
しょうぼうしゃ	fire truck	shoubousha
しろ	white	shiro
しろい	white	shiroi
しわ	wrinkles	shiwa
じん	~ nationality	~jin
しんかんせん	bullet train	shinkansen
しんぶん	newspaper	shinbun

す

すいか	watermelon	suika
すいようび	Wednesday	suiyoubi
すき	like	suki
すごい です ね	That's great. / That's awesome.	sugoi desu ne
すし	sushi	sushi
すなば	sand box	sunaba
スパゲッティー	spaghetti	supagetti–
スプーン	spoon	supu–n
ズボン	pants	zubon

せ

せいねんがっぴ	date of birth	seinengappi
せっけん	soap	sekken
ゼロ	zero, 0	zero
せんげつ	last month	sengetsu
せんしゅう	last week	senshuu
せんせい	teacher	sensei

そ

ぞう	elephant	zou
そこ	there, that place	soko
そっち	that one (out of 2)	socchi
そと	outside	soto
それ	that one (out of 3 or more)	sore

た

たいいくのひ	Sports Day	taiikunohi
だいきらい	really dislike, really hate	daikirai
だいこん	radish	daikon
だいすき	really like, like a lot	daisuki
タオル	towel	taoru
たばこ	cigarettes	tabako
たぶん	maybe	tabun
たべもの	food	tabemono
たまご	egg	tamago
たまねぎ	onion	tamanegi
だれ	who?	dare
たんさん	carbonation	tansan

たんじょうび	birthday	tanjoubi

ち

ちいき	region	chiiki
ちいさい	small	chiisai
チーズバーガー	cheeseburger	chi–zuba–ga–
ちえ	wisdom	chie
チキン	chicken	chikin
チケット	tickets	chiketto
ちゃいろ	brown (noun)	chairo
ちゃいろい	brown (adj.)	chairoi
ちゃわん	bowl	chawan
ちゅうごく	China	chuugoku

つ

つめたい	cold to the touch	tsumetai

て

て	hand	te
ていあつ	low pressure	teiatsu
デザート	dessert	deza–to
てっぽう	gun	teppou
でも	but	demo
テレビ	television	terebi
でんしゃ	train	densha
でんわ	telephone	denwa

と

トイレ	toilet	toire
とうめい	clear	toumei
とかげ	lizard	tokage
どくりつきねんび	Independence Day	dokuritsu kinenbi
とけい	clock	tokei
どこ	where?, what place?	doko
どっち	which one (two items)	docchi
トマト	tomato	tomato
ともだち	friend	tomodachi
どようび	Saturday	doyoubi
とり	bird	tori
ドル	dollars	doru
どれ	which one (three or more)	dore
どろぼう	a thief	dorobou
どんぐり	acorn	donguri

な

なか	inside	naka
なつかしい	dear, longed for	natsukashii

なな	7	nana
ななふん	7 minutes	nanafun
ななめ	diagonal	naname
なに	what?	nani
なにいろ	what color?	nani iro
なにご	what language?	nanigo
なにじん	what nationality?	nanijin
なまえ	name	namae
なんがつ	what month?	nangatsu
なんこ	How many round objects?	nanko
なんじ	what time?	nanji
なんにち	what day of the month?	nannichi
なんねん	what year?	nannen
なんの？	what? which? what kind of?	nanno？
なんぼん	How many cylindrical objects?	nanbon
なんまい	How many thin and flat objects?	nanmai
なんようび	what day of the week?	nanyoubi

に

に	2	ni
にがつ	February	nigatsu
にく	meat	niku
にし	west	nishi
にじ	two o'clock	niji
にじゅうごふん	25 minutes	nijuugofun
にじゅっぷん	20 minutes	nijuppun
にちようび	Sunday	nichiyoubi
にっき	diary	nikki
にふん	2 minutes	nifun
にほん	Japan	nihon
にほんご	Japanese language	nihongo
にほんごの せんせい	Japanese teacher	nihongo no sensei
にんじん	carrot	ninjin

ぬ

ぬぐ	to undress	nugu
ぬるい	warm, luke warm	nurui

ね

ねあげ	a rise in price	neage
ねぎ	green onion	negi
ねこ	cat	neko
ねじ	a screw	neji
ねずみ	mouse	nezumi

の

ノートパソコン	laptop computer	no–to pasokon
のみもの	a drink, drinks	nomimono

は

は	tooth, teeth	ha
パーティー	party	pa–ti–
はい	yes	hai
はいいろ	gray	haiiro
はいゆう	actor	haiyuu
はえ	house fly	hae
ばくはつ	explosion	bakuhatsu
はこぶ	to move an item	hakobu
はし	chopsticks	hashi
バス	bus	basu
バスケットボール	basketball	basuketto booru
パソコン	PC (computer)	pasokon
はた	flag	hata
はち	8	hachi
はちがつ	August	hachigatsu
はちじ	eight o'clock	hachiji
はちふん	8 minutes	hachifun
はっぴょう	an announcement	happyou
はっぷん	8 minutes	happun
はと	pigeon; dove	hato
パトカー	patrol car	patoka–
はな	flowers	hana
はな	nose	hana
バナナ	banana	banana
ハブラシ	toothbrush	haburashi
ハリソン・フォード	Harrison Ford (actor)	Harison Fo–do
はる	spring	haru
はん	half past (:30)	han
パン	bread	pan
パンダ	panda	panda

ひ

ビーフ	beef	bi–fu
ひがし	east	higashi
ぴかぴか	shiny	pikapika
ひこうき	airplane	hikouki
ピザ	pizza	piza
ひだり	left	hidari
ひつじ	sheep	hitsuji
ひま	free time	hima
ひらめ	halibut	hirame
ピンク	pink	pinku

ふ

ふうふ	married couple	fuufu
フォーク	fork	fo–ku
ふく	clothing, clothes	fuku
ぶた	pig	buta
ぶどう	grapes	budou

ふとん	futon	futon
ふね	ship; boat	fune
ブラッド・ピット	Brad Pitt (actor)	Braddo Pitto
ふるい	old	furui
フルーツ	fruit	furu–tsu
プレゼント	present, gift	purezento
ぶんかのひ	Culture Day	bunkanohi

へ

へいたい	soldier	heitai
ベッド	bed	beddo
へび	snake	hebi
ペン	pen	pen

ほ

ぼく	I, me (males only)	boku
ほし	star (in the sky)	hoshi
ほしい	want	hoshii
ポテト	French fries	poteto
ポテト	potato	poteto
ほん	book	hon

ま

まくら	pillow	makura
まぐろ	tuna	maguro
まど	window	mado
まね	imitation	mane
まる	circle, zero	maru

み

みかん / オレンジ	orange (fruit)	mikan / orenji
みぎ	right	migi
みず	water	mizu
みずいろ	light blue	mizuiro
みずを のむ	to drink water	mizuwo nomu
みそしる	miso soup	misoshiru
みどり	green	midori
みなみ	south	minami
みみ	ear	mimi
ミルク	milk	miruku

む

むずかしい	difficult	muzukashii
むね	chest	mune
むらさき	purple	murasaki

め

め	eye	me
めいし	business card	meishi
めがね	glasses	megane
めじるし	landmark	mejirushi
めずらしい	rare (adj.)	mezurashii
めだつ	to stand out	medatsu
メニュー	menu	menyu–

も

もうふ	blanket	moufu
もくじ	contents	mokuji
もくようび	Thursday	mokuyoubi
もしもし	hello (on the phone)	moshimoshi
もちろん	of course	mochiron
もも	peach	momo

や

やさい	vegetable	yasai
やすみ	day off, break	yasumi
やね	roof	yane

ゆ

ゆうえんち	fun park	yuuenchi
ゆび	finger	yubi

よ

ようちえん	kindergarten	youchien
よじ	four o'clock	yoji
よしお	a common boy's first name	Yoshio
よん	4	yon
よんじゅうごふん	45 minutes	yonjuugofun
よんじゅっぷん	40 minutes	yonjuppun
よんぷん	4 minutes	yonpun

ら

ライオン	lion	raion
らいげつ	next month	raigetsu
らいしゅう	next week	raishuu
らいねん	next year	rainen
らくがき	graffiti	rakugaki
ラスベガス	Las Vegas	rasu begasu
らんぼう	violence	ranbou

り

りゆう	a reason	riyuu
りょこう	travel	ryokou
りんご	apple	ringo

れ

れい	zero, 0	rei
れいぞうこ	refrigerator	reizouko
レストラン	restaurant	resutoran
レタス	lettuce	retasu
レモン	lemon	remon
れんらく	contact	renraku

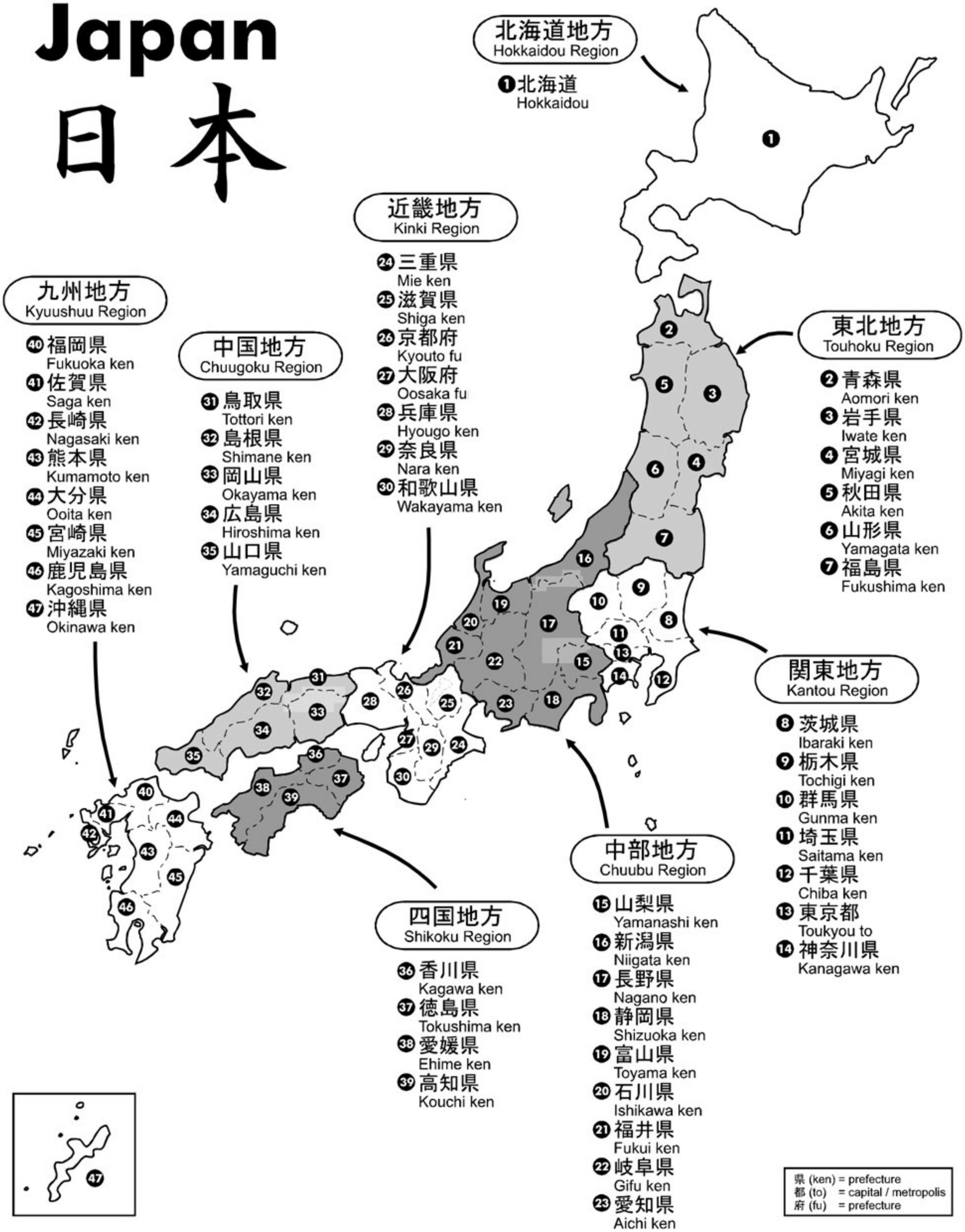
ろ

ろうか	hallway	rouka
ろうじん	old person	roujin
ろく	6	roku
ろくがつ	June	rokugatsu
ろくじ	six o'clock	rokuji
ろくじゅっぷん	60 minutes	rokujuppun
ロサンゼルス	Los Angeles	rosanzerusu
ろっぷん	6 minutes	roppun
ロブスター	lobster	robusuta–

わ

わかる	to understand, know	wakaru
わすれもの	forgotten item	wasuremono
わたし	I, me (male or female)	watashi

Japan
日本


北海道地方
Hokkaidou Region
1 北海道
Hokkaidou
近畿地方
Kinki Region
24 三重県
Mie ken
25 滋賀県
Shiga ken
26 京都府
Kyouto fu
27 大阪府
Oosaka fu
28 兵庫県
Hyougo ken
29 奈良県
Nara ken
30 和歌山県
Wakayama ken
九州地方
Kyuushuu Region
40 福岡県
Fukuoka ken
41 佐賀県
Saga ken
42 長崎県
Nagasaki ken
43 熊本県
Kumamoto ken
44 大分県
Ooita ken
45 宮崎県
Miyazaki ken
46 鹿児島県
Kagoshima ken
47 沖縄県
Okinawa ken
中国地方
Chuugoku Region
31 鳥取県
Tottori ken
32 島根県
Shimane ken
33 岡山県
Okayama ken
34 広島県
Hiroshima ken
35 山口県
Yamaguchi ken
東北地方
Touhoku Region
2 青森県
Aomori ken
3 岩手県
Iwate ken
4 宮城県
Miyagi ken
5 秋田県
Akita ken
6 山形県
Yamagata ken
7 福島県
Fukushima ken
関東地方
Kantou Region
8 茨城県
Ibaraki ken
9 栃木県
Tochigi ken
10 群馬県
Gunma ken
11 埼玉県
Saitama ken
12 千葉県
Chiba ken
13 東京都
Toukyou to
14 神奈川県
Kanagawa ken
中部地方
Chuubu Region
15 山梨県
Yamanashi ken
16 新潟県
Niigata ken
17 長野県
Nagano ken
18 静岡県
Shizuoka ken
19 富山県
Toyama ken
20 石川県
Ishikawa ken
21 福井県
Fukui ken
22 岐阜県
Gifu ken
23 愛知県
Aichi ken
四国地方
Shikoku Region
36 香川県
Kagawa ken
37 徳島県
Tokushima ken
38 愛媛県
Ehime ken
39 高知県
Kouchi ken
県 (ken) = prefecture
都 (to) = capital / metropolis
府 (fu) = prefecture

YesJapan
Learn Japanese Today!

Hiragana Chart ひらがな

わ wa	ら ra	や ya	ま ma	ぱ pa	ば ba	は ha	な na	だ da	た ta	ざ za	さ sa	が ga	か ka	あ a
	り ri		み mi	ぴ pi	び bi	ひ hi	に ni	ぢ ji	ち chi	じ ji	し shi	ぎ gi	き ki	い i
を wo	る ru	ゆ yu	む mu	ぷ pu	ぶ bu	ふ fu	ぬ nu	づ zu	つ tsu	ず zu	す su	ぐ gu	く ku	う u
	れ re		め me	ぺ pe	べ be	へ he	ね ne	で de	て te	ぜ ze	せ se	げ ge	け ke	え e
ん n	ろ ro	よ yo	も mo	ぽ po	ぼ bo	ほ ho	の no	ど do	と to	ぞ zo	そ so	ご go	こ ko	お o



りゃ rya	みゃ mya	ぴゃ pya	びゃ bya	ひゃ hya	にゃ nya	ちゃ cha	じゃ ja	しゃ sha	ぎゃ gya	きゃ kya
りゅ ryu	みゅ myu	ぴゅ pyu	びゅ byu	ひゅ hyu	にゅ nyu	ちゅ chu	じゅ ju	しゅ shu	ぎゅ gyu	きゅ kyu
りょ ryo	みょ myo	ぴょ pyo	びょ byo	ひょ hyo	にょ nyo	ちょ cho	じょ jo	しょ sho	ぎょ gyo	きょ kyo

YesJapan.com

Other From Zero! Books

